speakout 2ND EDITION

Discover English as it is really spoken

Speakout 2nd Edition is a comprehensive six-level general English course for adults that has been developed in association with ***BBC Worldwide*** and ***BBC Learning English***. The course integrates authentic video from popular BBC programmes into every unit and builds the skills and knowledge learners need to express themselves confidently in a real English-speaking environment.

Completely revised and aligned to the ***Global Scale of English***, this edition has striking new visuals, updated reading and listening texts, new video clips and a large bank of additional practice material.

Speakout Extra

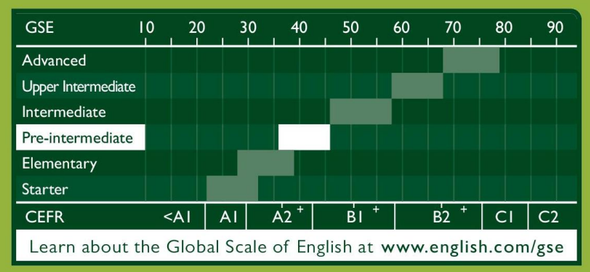
Speakout Extra provides downloadable worksheets that meet learners' individual needs by providing them with additional grammar, vocabulary, pronunciation and skills practice. It also includes extra video exploitation activities to help learners get the most out of the BBC clips.

Components

- Students' Book with DVD-ROM
- Students' Book with DVD-ROM and MyEnglishLab
- Class Audio CDs
- Workbook with Audio (with and without key)
- Teacher's Book with Resource and Assessment Disc
- ActiveTeach

Student's online video and audio resources at:

www.english.com/speakout



ISBN 978-1-292-11597-9

speakout 2ND EDITION Pre-intermediate Students' Book with DVD-ROM

Clare • Wilson

PEARSON

Antonia Clare • JJ Wilson

speakout 2ND EDITION

Pre-intermediate Students' Book

with DVD-ROM

GLOBAL SCALE of English

BBC

ALWAYS LEARNING

PEARSON

https://poloet.edu.vn

Pearson Education Limited
Edinburgh Gate
Harlow
Essex CM20 2JE
England
and Associated Companies throughout the world.

www.pearsonelt.com

© Pearson Education Limited 2015

The right of Antonia Clare and JJ Wilson to be identified as authors of this Work has been asserted by them in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

First published 2015
ISBN: 978-1-2921-1597-9
Set in Aptifer sans 10/12 pt
Printed in Slovakia by Neografia

Acknowledgements
The Publisher and authors would like to thank the following people and institutions for their feedback and comments during the development of the material: **Hungary:** Tom Boyle; **Japan:** Will Pearson; **Poland:** Lech Wojciech Krzeminski, Piotr Święcicki; **UK:** Ben Hodge, Joelle Finck, John Barron, Prakash Parmer.

Text acknowledgements
We are grateful to the following for permission to reproduce copyright material:
Extract on page 172 from Outlook, Matthew Bannister interviewing Jessica Fox, 31/01/2013, http://jessicafox.info/wp-content/uploads/2013/01/BBCWorld-Service-Interview-1_21_2013.mp3, copyright © BBC Worldwide Learning.

Audio acknowledgements
Extract from Outlook, Matthew Bannister interviewing Jessica Fox, 31/01/2013, http://jessicafox.info/wp-content/uploads/2013/01/BBCWorld-Service-Interview-1_21_2013.mp3, copyright © BBC Worldwide Learning.

Illustration acknowledgements
Fred Blunt pgs 9, 11, 39, 43, 56, 66, 76, 86, 91, 106, 109, 126, 133, 138, 141, 145, 148; **Stephen Cheetham** (Handsome Frank) pgs 80; **Matt Herring** pgs 159; Infomen pgs 161, 163; **Joanna Kerr** pgs 60; **Andrew Lyons** pgs 90; Harry Malt pgs 165, 166; **Vicky Woodgate** pgs 18, 39, 80; **Jurgen Ziewe** pgs 103; **In house** pgs 16, 46, 52, 53, 56, 7 8, 136.

Photo acknowledgements
The Publisher would like to thank the following for their kind permission to reproduce their photographs:

(Key: b-bottom; c-centre; l-left; r-right; t-top)

123RF.com: Cathy Yeulet 152 (j), Seanjoh 93 (g), Andrei Shumskiy 7b (icon), 17b (icon), 27b (icon), 37b (icon), 47b (icon), 57b (icon), 67b (icon), 77b (icon), 87b (icon), 97b (icon), 107b (icon), 117b (icon), Hieng Ling Tie 157 (soya); **4Corners Images:** Antonino Bartuccio / Sime 27r, 34-35; **Alamy Images:** Age Fotostock / Caroline Webber 52cr, Alvey & Towers Picture Library 20 (c), Ammentorp Photography 37cr, 43b, Blend Images 37l, BriggsMorris 153 (o), Paul Brown 102 (c), Viktor Cap 50bl, Cultura Creative (RF) 12l, 17cr, Cyrille Gibot 162, Ian Dagnall 87cr, dbimages 88 (c), Dbimages / Allen Brown 32, Eagle Visions Photography / Craig Lovell 93 (f), EpicStockMedia 58tr, Jose Pedro Fernandes 155 (travel guide), Andrew Fox 103t, Kevin Foy 100 (b), fStop / Andreas Stamm 43t, Manfred Grebler 156 (m), H. Mark Weidman Photography 154 (13), Hi Brow Arabia 38c, ICIMAGE 77t, Image Source 83 (e), Image Source Salsa 57r, 64-65, imageBROKER 20 (b), 113, Mark Jordan 102 (b), Juice Images 38cr, Mikael Karlsson 92c, Lucie Lang 110-111tc, Freer Law 63l, Cro Magnon 52tr, Steven May 158 (f), Mediacolor's 47r, New York City 30-31b, PhotoAlto / Frederic Cirou 42tr, Prisma Bildagentur AG 29t, Purepix 7t, Sabena Jane Blackbird 85r, Alex Segre 28tl, Adrian Sherratt 41tl, Paul Springett 08 23 (c), Anna Stowe 12tr, Tetra Images 81 (a), 153 (e), Eniz Umuler 122 (c), Gregg Vignal 153 (n), Jonny White 154 (12), XiXinXing 17l, ZUMA Press Inc 58c; **BBC Photo Library:** Gary Moyes 7r, 14-15; **BBC Worldwide Ltd:** 14l, 24l, 34l, 44, 44cl, 64l, 67r, 74l, 94l, 114bl; **Camera Press Ltd:** Telegraph / Martin Pope 121; **Corbis:** Aflo / Naho Yoshizawa 41tr, Tim Clayton 28bl, Crave / Hbss 122 (b), Flame / Simon Marcus 30-31t, Hello Lovely 160, Image Source 38bl, 156 (f), Jabruson / Nature Picture Library 67t, Karen Kasmauski 79b, Move Art Management 102 (a), Ocean 27cl, Redchopsticks 59t, Sopa / Antonino Bartuccio 52tl, Tetra Images 57cr, Tetra Images / Mike Kemp 107r, 114-115, Silke Woweries 109t, Arman Zhenikeyev 117l; **Datacraft Co Ltd:** 41b, 154 (5); **DK Images:** 155 (first aid kit), Steve Baxter 60cr, Dave King 77l, Mockford and Bonetti 155 (b), Rough Guides / Nelson Hancock 29b, 83 (d), Rough Guides / Victor Borg 155 (d), William Shaw 157 (lamb), Lorenzo Vecchia 157 (grapefruit); **Fotolia.com:** Amax 51tr, barneyboogles 82b, Belman 70br, Mariusz Blach 157 (garlic), Calado 155 (g), CandyBox Images 13br, courtyardpix 97l, drx 153 (l), EpicStockMedia 48, eurobanks 20 (g), fovito 67cr, goodluz 10b, Joe Gough 157 (steak), grafikplusfoto 7l, Guido Grochowski 78br, imagedb.com 156 (e), Kletr 70tr, lowonconcept 155 (souvenir), M.studio 57cl, Maksud 60cl, mangostock 152 (n), Marek 154 (7), margo555 157 (peas), mates 157 (cucumber), Monart Design 61, natalyka 157 (courgette), Natika 157 (carrots), Sergey Nivens 87l, Igor Normann 93 (c), Oleg_Zabielin 81 (f), P.R 92t, Franz Pfluegl 20 (d), PhotoSG 158, pressmaster 153 (m), Route66 158 (a), runique 93 (b), Spinetta 70cr, stockphoto-graf 157 (ice cream), Syda Productions 153 (j), Taboga 93 (d), Thegoatman 93 (a), Nicola Vernizzi 93 (e), Vicgmyr 70tl, Swetlana Wall 157 (duck), whitelook 17r, 24b, Maksym Yemelyanov 70bl, yvdavid 157 (shrimps), Zharastudio 98b; **Getty Images:** AFP / Calle Toernstroem 21, AFP / Stringer 77r, 84l, Altrendo Images 153 (k), Andersen Ross 13bl, Blend Images / Tom Grill 153 (c), Shaun Botterill 124l, Caiaimage / Chris Ryan 153 (b), China Span / Keren Su 47cl, Robert Cianflone 97t, Connie Coleman 51bl, Cultura RM / Nancy Honey 154 (10), Mary Kate Denny 52b, Digital Vision 20 (f), E+ / Ilbusca 100 (a), E+ / Mark Bowden 97cr, Hulton Archive 45b, Image Source 111c, iStock / Pixdeluxe 156 (c), iStock / 360 / Jacob Wackerhausen 153 (h), iStock / Hadynyah 54b, iStock / Helena Lovincic 97cl, Jean-Erick PASQUIER / Contributor 17t, Christopher Kimmel 96, Dan Kitwood 107cl, Shaun Lombard / Vetta 27t, Maskot 62, Moment 84-85 (background), PhotoAlto / James Hardy 77cr, Javier Pierini 18, Oli Scarff 58tl, The Image Bank 102 (d), The Image Gate 107t, Travel Ink 104b, Betsie Van Der Meer 7cr, WireImage / Amanda Edwards 120tl, www.ExtremeSportsPhoto.com / David Spurdens 51br, Daniel Zuchnik 117cl, 120tr; **Hug it forward:** 88 (a); **Imagemore Co., Ltd:** 156 (b); **John Foxx Images:** Imagestate 92l, 159t (g), 159t (r); **Masterfile UK Ltd:** Thomas Dannenberg 47cr; **Nature Picture Library:** Edwin Giesbers 87t; **Pearson Education Ltd:** Gareth Boden 81 (c), 81 (d), 153 (a), Jules Selmes 23 (b), Tudor Photography 155 (walking boots), Coleman Yuen 155 (h); **Pearson Education Ltd:** 155 (dictionary); **Alan Peebles:** alanpeebles.com 67l, 68; **Plainpicture Ltd:** Kniel Synnatzschke 33; **Press Association Images:** AP / Denis Farrell 79tl, Zak Hussein 89 (b), PA Archive / Andrew Milligan 97r, 104l; **Reuters:** Claudia Daut (CUBA) 57t; **Rex Features:** 31cr, Associated Newspapers 67cl, 70c, Peter Brooker 79tr, Duncan Bryceland 54l, Csu Archv / Everett 37r, 44-45, Image Broker 47t, Most Wanted 78b, Robert Harding / David C Poole 104-105, Staley / Lat 124-125b, Crispin Thruston 117r, 125b, Dan Tuffs 100 (c); **Robert Harding World Imagery:** 28tr; **Shutterstock.com:** Africa Studio 157 (tea), Alexander Raths 152 (l), Andrey Burmakin 152 (i), antb 152 (f), Jim Barber 158 (h), Stephane Bidouze 159t (t), bikeriderlondon 156 (i), Ruth Black 157 (cupcake), BlueOrange Studio 82 (a), Bochkarev Photography 157 (fish), Christopher Boswell 158 (g), bullet74 155 (e), Diego Cervo 153 (f), Jacek Chabraszewski 156 (a), Konstantin Chagin 37cl, claffra 159t (k), James Clarke 155 (binoculars), Coprid 155 (hat), Corepics VOF 87r, Tiago Jorge da Silva Estima 159t (f), davidpstephens 159t (a), Deklofenak 153 (i), design56 155 (soap), Dionisvera 157 (apple), 157 (spinach), Goran Djukanovic 122 (a), Pichugin Dmitry 158 (desert), dotshock 156 (d), Denis Dryashkin 157 (potatoes), Igor Dutina 60t, Ekkachai 22-23 (a), EM Arts 59b, 157 (onion), EpicStockMedia 156 (k), eurobanks 155 (aspirin bottle), f9photos 155 (backpack), Dima Fadeev 156 (j), FineShine 159t (b), Fotonium 155 (suitcase), David Fowler 155 (k), g215 155 (umbrella), gamble19 152 (e), Gavran333 157 (lettuce), gkrphoto 60b, Volodymyr Goinyk 159t (p), Goodluz 152 (m), Andrii Gorulko 63tr, Peter Gudella 159t (l), Todd S. Holder 17cl, HomeStudio 155 (street map), Ronnie Howard 159t (s), hxdbzxy 82-83 (c), ifong 157 (barley corn), IM_photo 155 (f), IM photo 27l, Infocus 63b (background), irin-k 159t (m), Brian A Jackson 158 (d), javarman 7cl, Jessmine 157 (cabbage), JonMilnes 10tr, Junial Enterprises 152 (o), Mariusz S. Jurgielewicz 158 (coastline), Kamira 159t (n), Evgeny Karandaev 157 (grapes), 157 (orange juice), Sebastian Kaulitzki 158 (b), Robert Kneschke 152 (k), Fatih Kocyildir 155 (notepad), Igor Kolos 153 (g), Viachaslau Kraskouski 59t (background), Veniamin Kraskov 158 (river), Raj Krish 159t (z), kurhan 152 (d), Laboko 157 (cream), Alexandra Lande 155 (c), Philip Lange 155 (a), Nata-Lia 37t, Liviu Ionut Pantelimon 154 (2), Lucky Business 38cl, 153 (d), Luis CÃ © sar Tejo 159t (o), Anatoliy Lukich 87cl, Masalski Maksim 155 (digital camera), Viktar Malyshchyts 157 (lemon), 157 (melon), Xavier Marchant 159t (c), Maridav 57l, 156 (l), Sergio Martinez 157 (roast chicken), michaeljung 10tl, 156 (h), Mny-Jhee 157 (biscuits), Monkey Business Images 38t, 38br, 81 (b), 82 (b), 123, 152 (b), 154 (11), Andrea Muscatello 155 (i), My Good Images 8, 159t (h), Maks Narodenko 157 (bananas), Nattika 157 (plum), Naypong 159t (i), Niderlander 154 (4), Ninell 157 (broccoli), nito 157 (jelly), Nomad_Soul 63t (background), O.Bellini 157 (fizzy drink), Oleg Zabielin 152 (c), Tyler Olson 77cl, 81 (e), Robert Palmer 159t (q), paytai 159t (j), Pelfophoto 154 (3), Perspectives - Jeff Smith 158 (ocean), William Perugini 12br, Vadim Petrakov 158 (waterfall), PhotoBarmaley 51tl, pogonici 157 (yoghurt), Olga Popova 157 (oats), Brian Prawl 155 (n), Mike Price 159t (u), Procy 158 (glacier), Pudi Studio 117cr, Celso Pupo 158 (lake), puwanai 158 (rain forest), Valentina Razumova 157 (orange), Ian Rentoul 159t (d), Yevgen Romanenko 157 (cheese), Federico Rostagno 155 (j), RTimages 100 (d), Jorge Salcedo 72, Atiketta Sangasaeng 94-95, Sasimoto 155 (money belt), Mariia Sats 154 (6), Dan Scandal 155 (alarm clock), Irina Schmidt 98t, sgm 27cr, smereka 159t (x), Ljupco Smokovski 156 (g), Florin Stana 109b, Alex Staroseltsev 157 (kiwi), 157 (pineapple), Swellphotography 157 (coffee), Syda Productions 152 (h), Aleksandar Todorovic 158 (e), 159t (y), Triff 154 (8), Mogens Trolle 159t (e), Thor Jorgen Udvang 155 (l), urfin 157 (milk), Repina Valeriya 157 (wheat), Anke van Wyk 159t (w), Vibrant Image Studio 155 (m), Valentyn Volkov 157 (mango), 157 (watermelon), VR Photos 152 (g), wavebreakmedia 20 (e), 23 (d), Edward Westmacott 157 (Lobster), XiXinXing 152 (a), Alaettin Yildirim 59c, Gary Yim 158 (mountain range), Jacinto Yoder 159t (v), Olena Zaskochenko 155 (waterproof jacket), zcw 157 (mussels); **SuperStock:** Axiom Photographic / Design Pics 99, Corbis 107cr, 112, imagebroker.net 29c, Juice Images 154 (9), LatitudeStock / Capture Ltd 54-55, Robert Harding Picture Library 74-75 (background), Westend61 107l; **The Kobal Collection:** Marvel / Paramount 118tr, Mediapro Studios 118bl, Miramax / Dimension Films / Tweedie, Penny 49tl, Recorded Picture Company 47l, 48tl, Riama-Pathe 117t, River Road / Paramount 48tr, Video Vision Entertainment / Distant Horizon / Pathe 118tl, Warner Bros 118br; **www.imagesource.com:** 154 (1), Photolibrary 20 (a)

All other images © Pearson Education

Every effort has been made to trace the copyright holders and we apologise in advance for any unintentional omissions. We would be pleased to insert the appropriate acknowledgement in any subsequent edition of this publication.

https://polcet.edu.vn

speakout 2ND EDITION

Pre-intermediate Students' Book

with DVD-ROM

Antonia Clare • JJ Wilson

https://polcet.edu.vn

CONTENTS

	LESSON	GRAMMAR/FUNCTION	VOCABULARY	PRONUNCIATION	READING	LISTENING/DVD	SPEAKING	WRITING
UNIT 1	**LIFE** page 7	BBC interviews | What do you look for in a friend?						
1.1	**Feeling good?** page 8	question forms	free time	stressed words	understand an article about the secrets of happiness		ask and answer questions about holidays and weekends	
1.2	**True love** page 10	past simple	relationships	past simple verbs: *-ed* endings		listen to stories about offers of marriage	ask and answer personal questions	write about an important year in your life; improve your use of linking words
1.3	**Nice day, isn't it?** page 12	making conversation	conversation topics	linking		understand routine exchanges	making conversation	
1.4	**Someone Special** page14					BBC **Miranda**: watch an extract from a sitcom about a woman called Miranda	talk about important people in your life	write about your best friend
UNIT 2	**WORK** page 17	BBC interviews | What do you do?						
2.1	**The company 4U?** page 18	present simple and continuous	work	word stress		listen to interviews about jobs	talk about what motivates you at work	write an email about work experience
2.2	**A risky business** page 20	adverbs of frequency	jobs	stressed syllables	read a newspaper article about dangerous jobs		talk about dangerous jobs	
2.3	**I like working outside** page 22	expressing likes/dislikes	types of work	intonation: sound interested		listen to a man talking about his job	talk about your perfect job	
2.4	**Dream Commuters** page 24				read the results of a survey about work/life balance	BBC **The Money Programme: Dream Commuters**: watch an extract from a BBC documentary about commuting	describe your work/life balance	write a web comment about work/life balance
UNIT 3	**TIME OUT** page 27	BBC interviews | What do you like doing in your their free time?						
3.1	**Free in NYC** page 28	present continuous/ *be going to* for future	time out	fast speech: *going to*		listen to a radio programme about going out in New York	talk about your future plans	write an email invitation
3.2	**Relax!** page 30	questions without auxiliaries	places to visit	stress in compound nouns	read about how people spend their free time around the world		discuss how you spend your free time	
3.3	**Can I take a message?** page 32	making a phone call	collocations	linking: *can*		understand some problem phone calls	make and receive phone calls	
3.4	**Rio de Janeiro** page 34					BBC **Going Local: Rio:** watch an extract from a BBC travel programme about visiting Rio de Janeiro	plan a perfect day out	write an invitation for a day out
UNIT 4	**GREAT MINDS** page 37	BBC interviews | Are you learning anything at the moment?						
4.1	**Hidden talent** page 38	present perfect + *ever/never*	*make* and *do*	weak forms: *have*		listen to someone describing how he used his hidden talent	talk about hidden talents	check your work and correct mistakes
4.2	**Schools of thought** page 40	*can, have to, must*	education	weak forms: *have to*	read an article about different schools		talk about rules in schools	
4.3	**What should I do?** page 42	giving advice	language learning	silent letters	read replies to a website message		give advice and make suggestions for language learners	
4.4	**Inventions** page 44					BBC **Supersized Earth: The Way We Move**: watch an extract from a BBC documentary about developments that have changed the world	talk about inventions	write a forum post about inventions
UNIT 5	**TRAVEL** page 47	BBC interviews | Do you enjoy travelling to different countries?						
5.1	**Fantastic film trips** page 48	past simple and past continuous	transport	weak forms: *was/were*	read about amazing journeys in film		tell a anecdote	
5.2	**Travel tips** page 50	verb patterns	travel items	stressed syllables		understand travel advice	discuss travel	write an email describing a trip or weekend away
5.3	**You can't miss it** page 52	asking for/giving directions	tourism	intonation: questions	read a text about a man who works in three countries every day		ask for and give directions	
5.4	**Full Circle** page 54					BBC **Full Circle**: watch an extract from a BBC travel programme	present ideas for an award	write an application for an award
UNIT 6	**FITNESS** page 57	BBC interviews | What do you do to keep fit?						
6.1	**Keeping fit** page 58	present perfect + *for/since*	health	sentence stress	identify specific information in an article about types of exercise		talk about your lifestyle	
6.2	**The future of food** page 60	*may, might, will*	food	intonation: certainty/ uncertainty		listen to a radio interview with a food expert	discuss food preferences	write about food
6.3	**How are you feeling?** page 62	seeing the doctor	illness	difficult words: spelling v. pronunciation		listen to conversations between a doctor and her patients	explain health problems	
6.4	**Monitor Me** page 64					BBC **Horizon: Monitor Me**: watch an extract from a BBC documentary about health	talk about healthy habits	write a blog post about health advice

DVD-ROM: BBC DVD CLIPS AND SCRIPTS BBC INTERVIEWS AND SCRIPTS CLASS AUDIO AND SCRIPTS

https://polcet.edu.vn

CONTENTS

CONTENTS

	LESSON	GRAMMAR/FUNCTION	VOCABULARY	PRONUNCIATION	READING	LISTENING/DVD	SPEAKING	WRITING
UNIT 7	**CHANGES** page 67 BBC interviews | How has your life changed in the last ten years?							
7.1	Living the dream page 68	*used to*	verbs + prepositions	weak forms: *used to*	read about living the dream	listen to a radio programme about a woman who changed her life	talk about how your life has changed	use paragraphs to write about a decision that changed your life
7.2	The great impostor page 70	purpose, cause and result	collocations	rhythm in complex sentences	read and predict information in a story		talk about why people tell lies	
7.3	Can you tell me? page 72	finding out information	facilities	intonation: checking information	read about studying abroad	understand short, predictable conversations	learn to check and confirm information	
7.4	A Greek Adventure page 74					BBC **My Family And Other Animals**: watch an extract from the beginning of a BBC film about a family that moves to Greece	talk about new experiences	write a blog/diary
UNIT 8	**MONEY** page 77 BBC interviews | How do you feel about shopping?							
8.1	Treasure hunt page 78	relative clauses	money	pronouncing the letter '*s*'	read the story of a treasure hunt		talk about a project that people should invest in	
8.2	Pay me more! page 80	*too much/many*, *enough*, *very*	multi-word verbs	multi-word verb stress		listen to a discussion about salaries	talk about why you should earn more	write an opinion piece
8.3	I'm just looking page 82	buying things	shopping	weak forms: *do you/can I*	read a questionnaire about shopping	listen to conversations in shops	describe items; go shopping	
8.4	soleRebels page 84					BBC **BBC News: soleRebels**: watch an extract from the BBC news about an Ethiopian business	present a money-making idea	write a competition entry for a business investment
UNIT 9	**NATURE** page 87 BBC interviews | How do you feel about being in the countryside?							
9.1	Green living page 88	comparatives/superlatives	nature	stressed syllables	read about great green ideas	listen to a radio programme about green ideas	talk about green issues	write about your views on the environment
9.2	Into the wild page 90	articles	the outdoors	word stress, weak forms: *a* and *the*	understand an article about an experience in the wild		give your views on life in the city or the country	
9.3	It could be because … page 92	making guesses	silent letters	animals		listen to people discussing quiz questions	talk about different animals	
9.4	The Northern Lights page 94					BBC **Joanna Lumney in the Land of the Northern Lights**: watch an extract from a BBC documentary about the Northern Lights	talk about amazing places	write a travel blog
UNIT 10	**SOCIETY** page 97 BBC interviews | How do you feel about city life?							
10.1	Top cities page 98	uses of *like*	describing a city	sentence stress	read about the best cities for young people	listen to conversations about different cities	discuss qualities of different places	use formal expressions to write an email
10.2	Crime and punishment page 100	present/past passive	crime and punishment	weak forms: *was/were*	read an article about crime and punishment		discuss alternative punishments to fit the crimes	
10.3	There's a problem page 102	complaining	problems	sentence stress		listen to people complaining	talk about problems in a school	
10.4	Mary's Meals page 104					BBC **Mary's Meals**: watch an extract from a BBC documentary about an internet sensation	talk about an important issue	write about an issue
UNIT 11	**TECHNOLOGY** page 107 BBC interviews | How do you feel about technology?							
11.1	Keeping in touch page 108	present perfect	communication	sentence stress		listen to people talking about how they keep in touch	talk about things you've done/would like to do	improve your use of pronouns
11.2	Make a difference page 110	real conditionals + *when*	feelings	weak forms: *will*	read an article about social media		talk about future consequences	
11.3	I totally disagree page 112	giving opinions	internet terms	polite intonation	read about wasting time	listen to a discussion about the internet	give your opinion	
11.4	Is TV Bad For Kids? page 114					BBC **Panorama: Is TV Bad For Kids?**: watch an extract from a BBC documentary about giving up television	talk about technology you couldn't live without	write a web comment about technology
UNIT 12	**FAME** page 117 BBC interviews | Would you like to be famous?							
12.1	Caught on film page 118	reported speech	film	contrastive stress	read a magazine article about writing a blockbuster		talk about your favourite film	
12.2	A lucky break page 120	hypothetical conditionals present/future	suffixes	word stress	read a magazine article about internet fame	listen to people talking about fame	talk about being famous	write about a famous person
12.3	What can I do for you? page 122	requests and offers	collocations	polite intonation: requests	read a text about concierges	listen to people making requests	make requests and offers	
12.4	Billion Dollar Man page 124					BBC **Lewis Hamilton: Billion Dollar Man**: watch an extract from a BBC documentary about Lewis Hamilton	talk about your ambitions	write about your childhood ambitions

IRREGULAR VERBS page 127 LANGUAGE BANK page 128 PHOTO BANK page 152 COMMUNICATION BANK page 160 AUDIO SCRIPTS page 168

https://polcet.edu.vn

LEAD-IN

CLASSROOM LANGUAGE

1 A Complete the questions with the words in the box.

say	to	does	you	are	do

1 What _____ this mean?
2 How _____ you spell it?
3 What page _____ we on?
4 What's the answer _____ number 6?
5 Can _____ repeat that, please?
6 How do you _____ this word?

B Match questions 1–6 above with answers a)–f).

a) OK. Which part? The whole sentence?
b) It's a type of food.
c) Page 63.
d) You don't say the 'k'. Listen: 'knee'.
e) The answer is b.
f) B-a-n-a-n-a.

SPELLING

2 A L.1 Listen and write down the words you hear.

B Listen again to check.

C Write down ten words in English.

D Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: say your word and then spell it out. Student B: write it down.

PARTS OF SPEECH

3 Match the parts of speech in the box with the words in bold.

~~verb~~	adjective	auxiliary	adverb	noun
article	preposition of place			

1 I **studied** here last year. *verb*
2 We have **a** new teacher.
3 This is a great **school**.
4 The class is **in** Room 14.
5 **Do** you like speaking English?
6 The teachers are **helpful**.
7 I work **quickly**.

TENSES AND STRUCTURES

4 Find one example of each of these things in the text below.

1 present simple
2 present continuous
3 present perfect
4 past simple
5 *going to* for future plans

My name is Yoko. I was born in Japan, but at the moment I'm living in the United States. I've been here for six months. I'm going to visit my uncle in Canada next year.

QUESTION WORDS

5 Complete the questions with the words in the box.

who	where	what	when	why	how

1 _____ is your name?
2 _____ do you know in this class (which students)?
3 _____ do you come from?
4 _____ is your birthday?
5 _____ do you come to school: by car or by public transport?
6 _____ are you studying English? Do you need it for your job?

AUXILIARY VERBS

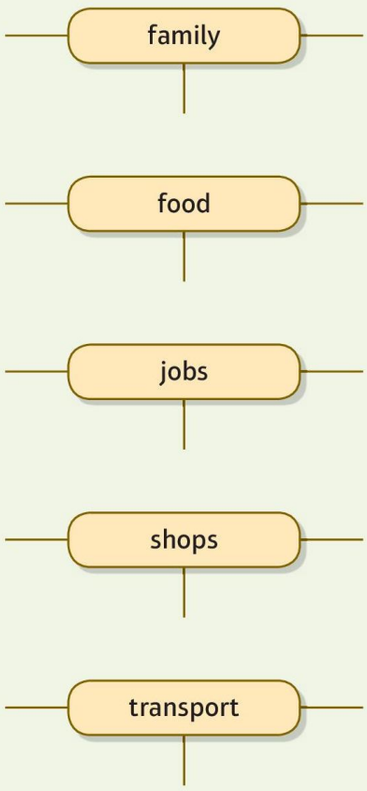
6 Underline the correct alternative.

1 What *do/does/are* you do?
2 Where *do/does/is* she live?
3 What *do/does/did* they do yesterday evening?
4 I *am not/don't/doesn't* know the answers to these questions.
5 The library *don't/not/doesn't* open on Sundays.
6 We *don't/didn't/weren't* go on holiday last year.
7 *Is/Are/Do* you studying at the moment?
8 John *doesn't/isn't/aren't* using the computer, so you can use it.

VOCABULARY

7 Complete the word webs with the words in the box.

car	shop assistant	bookshop	lawyer	bakery
uncle	tomato	grandmother	bike	doctor
supermarket	sugar	train	cousin	pasta



https://polcet.edu.vn

1 life





FEELING GOOD? p8



TRUE LOVE p10



NICE DAY, ISN'T IT? p12



SOMEONE SPECIAL p14

SPEAKING **1.1** Talk about what makes you happy **1.2** Ask and answer personal questions **1.3** Make conversation **1.4** Talk about important people in your life

LISTENING **1.2** Listen to stories about offers of marriage **1.3** Understand routine exchanges **1.4** Watch an extract from a BBC comedy

READING **1.1** Understand an article about the secrets of happiness

WRITING **1.2** Write about an important year in your life; Improve your use of linking words **1.4** Write about your best friend

BBC

INTERVIEWS

What do you look for in a friend?



https://polcet.edu.vn

1.1 FEELING GOOD?

G question forms
P stressed words
V free time

VOCABULARY

FREE TIME

1 A Think about three things that make you happy (e.g. *my family, walking on the beach, eating good food*). Work in pairs and compare your ideas.

B Complete phrases 1–5 with the verbs in the box.

~~go~~	eat	have	play	spend

1 *go* shopping/on holiday/for a walk
2 _____ time with family/money/time alone
3 _____ out/with friends/good food
4 _____ time off/a barbecue/a party
5 _____ (a) sport/a musical instrument/games

C Work in pairs. Do any of the activities in Exercise 1B make you happy? Add some more activities to the list.

READING

2 A Read the magazine article. Which of these things do you do already? Which could you do more of?

B Work in pairs. Which of the seven ideas do you think are the most/least important for you? Do you have any other ideas to include?



the Seven Secrets *of* Happiness

Everyone has a different idea of what happiness is, but most of us want to be happier. So, what can we learn from looking at the habits of happy people? Here are seven things to make you happy.

1 Sleep More Most people don't sleep enough. If you want to feel good about life, then try to sleep for at least seven hours a night.

2 Do Some Exercise You don't need to run for 20km or go to the gym every night, but a small amount of exercise will help you feel happy. Go for a short (10–15 minute) walk somewhere beautiful. It wakes up your brain.

3 Give to Others Research shows that giving money or time to help others makes you feel happier. Buying someone an unexpected present or spending some time doing voluntary work will give you a feeling of joy.

4 Be Interested Love what you do and try to learn something new. People who are curious and learn new things experience feelings of satisfaction and happiness.

5 Spend Time with Family and Friends This is probably the most important thing you can do. People who have a strong network of social relationships are not just happier; they live longer, too!

6 Focus on the Moment Try to find opportunities each day to enjoy the small things in life. Spend a little time on your own, and just enjoy the moment.

7 Smile! Smile more (even when you're feeling sad). Smiling can actually make you feel better. People who post big smiley photos of themselves on Facebook actually feel happier because they see the photo every day and it reminds them of happy times.

https://polcet.edu.vn

GRAMMAR

QUESTION FORMS

3 A Read the questions. Think about your answers.

1 How many hours do you usually sleep?
2 Are you good at sport?
3 How much time do you spend doing exercise? Where do you go?
4 What do you do that really interests you?
5 When did you last learn something new? Where were you?
6 What small things in life do you enjoy?

B Work in groups. Ask and answer the questions.

4 A Complete the questions in the tables.

Questions with auxiliaries			
question word	**auxiliary**	**subject**	**infinitive**
Where [2]_____	[1]_____ did	you	go? last learn something new?

Questions with *be*			
question word	***be***	**subject**	**adjective/noun/verb + *-ing*, etc.**
[4]_____	[3]_____ were	you you?	good at sport?

B Circle the correct word in bold to complete the rules.

RULES

1 In questions with auxiliaries, put *do/does/did* **before/after** the subject.
2 In questions with *be*, put *am/are/is/was/were* **before/after** the subject.

▷ page 128 **LANGUAGEBANK**

5 A Put the words in the correct order and add an auxiliary or *be* to make questions.

1 many / your / how / in / people / family?
2 see / often / you / parents / how / your?
3 family / with / you / spending / your / time / enjoy?
4 last / your / when / celebration / family?
5 you / with / live / who?
6 you / often / eat / friends / how / out / with?
7 friend / your / live / where / best?

B 1.1 Listen and check.

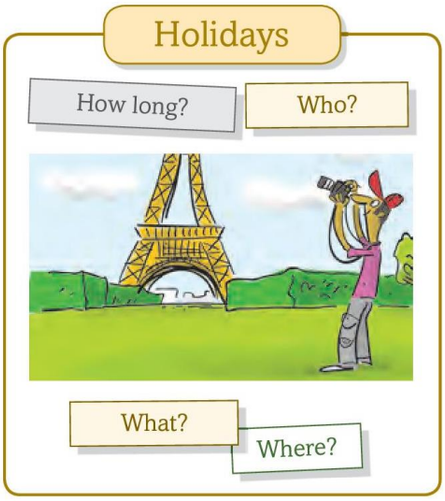
C STRESSED WORDS Look at audio script 1.1 on page 168. Underline the stressed words. Listen again and repeat.

How many people are in your family?

D Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

SPEAKING

6 A Work in pairs. You are going to interview other students. Look at the prompts and make questions about each topic. Choose a third topic to talk about.



B Work in groups. Ask and answer the questions.

C Tell the class. Who do you think:

1 has the best holidays?
2 has very busy weekends?
3 enjoys staying at home?
4 does the most exercise?
5 sleeps the most?
6 really knows how to enjoy themselves?

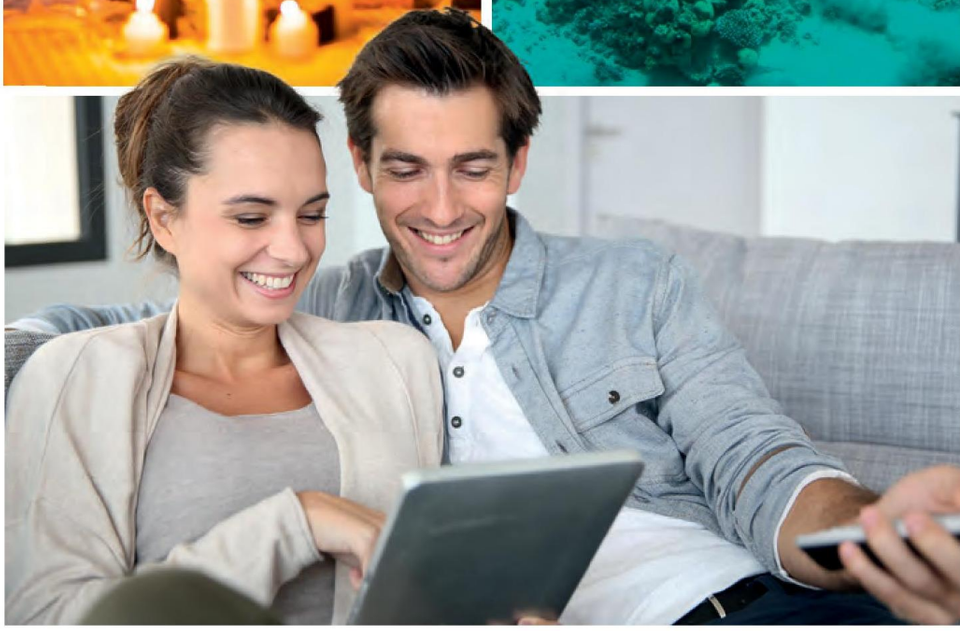
https://polcet.edu.vn

1.2 TRUE LOVE

G past simple
P past simple verbs: *-ed* endings
V relationships







SPEAKING

1 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

1 Do you believe in love at first sight? Why/Why not?
2 Where are good places to meet new people?

VOCABULARY

RELATIONSHIPS

2 A Read sentences 1–8. These describe the stages of a relationship. Match the phrases in bold with definitions a)–h).

1 He **proposed (to her)**.
2 They **got on well**.
3 They **got married**.
4 They **got engaged**.
5 They **met**.
6 She **accepted**.
7 He didn't **have a girlfriend**.
8 They **fell in love**.

a) agreed to marry
b) asked her to marry him
c) began to love each other
d) have a romantic relationship with a girl
e) said yes
f) had a good relationship
g) first knew each other
h) became husband and wife

B In what order do these things usually happen? Put the phrases 1–8 in Exercise 2A in order.

1 He didn't have a girlfriend.

C Write three true sentences about yourself or a friend. Use the phrases in bold in Exercise 2A.

I met my best friend, Piri, at a conference. We got on well immediately.

speakout TIP

Words like *get* and *have* are used in lots of different phrases in English. Keep lists of these phrases and add new phrases when you learn them. Write down all the phrases you know with *get*. Compare your list with your partner's.

LISTENING

3 A 1.2 Look at the pictures. They show how three people proposed to their partner. What do you think happened? Listen and check.

B Listen again and answer the questions.

1 In Story 1, where did the boyfriend propose?
2 Why did she say 'it was almost a disaster'?
3 In Story 2, which country were they in?
4 What happened on the boat?
5 In Story 3, how did the boyfriend propose?
6 How did she accept?

C Which stories do the sentences 1–6 come from? Work in pairs and use the sentences to help you re-tell the stories.

1 We were at a restaurant.
2 I didn't say anything. I just gave her the ring.
3 We met at art school.
4 Luckily, she smiled.
5 I accepted, but I didn't tell him.
6 He tried to stop me.

D Discuss. Which do you think is the best story? Why?

https://polcet.edu.vn

GRAMMAR

PAST SIMPLE

4 A Underline examples of verbs in the past simple in Exercise 3C.

B Complete the tables below with the correct form of the verbs in the past simple.

Past simple			
regular		**irregular**	
appear	*appeared*	go	_____
like	_____	fall	_____
decide	_____	get	_____
try	_____	say	_____

negative	I _____ tell him.
question	_____ they get married?
short answer	No, they _____ ./Yes, they did.

5 A 1.3 **PAST SIMPLE VERBS: *-ed* endings** Listen to three different ways to pronounce regular past simple verbs.

1 /d/ **lived** They lived in Africa.
2 /t/ **asked** He asked her to marry him.
3 /ɪd/ **started** They started a family.

B 1.4 Listen and put the words in the box in the correct column in the table below.

worked wanted stopped smiled walked needed talked studied helped decided

/d/	/t/	/ɪd/
lived	*asked*	*started*

page 128 **LANGUAGEBANK**

6 A Complete the sentences with the correct form of the past simple.

go (x2) stay see cook spend

1 I _____ my best friend three months ago.
2 I _____ to a wedding last summer.
3 I _____ up all night.
4 I _____ on holiday last month.
5 I _____ a meal for some friends last night.
6 I _____ the day with my sister on Monday.

B Make *When did you last …?* questions for each sentence in Exercise 6A.

When did you last see your best friend?

C Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.

A: *When did you last go on holiday?*
B: *It was a few months ago. I went to Malta with some friends.*

SPEAKING

7 A Write down five important dates in your life. Prepare to talk about them.

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer questions about the dates. Try to guess what happened.

A: *19th July 2006.*
B: *Did you get married?*
A: *No, I didn't.*
B: *Did you start work?*
A: *Yes, I did.*

WRITING

LINKING WORDS

8 A Match 1–4 with a)–d) to make sentences. Link the phrases with a word from the box below.

and so but because

1 In 1998 I finished my degree …
2 I moved house in 2002 …
3 I wanted to learn Italian …
4 They wanted to buy a house, …
a) they didn't have enough money.
b) I could travel around the country.
c) started my first job.
d) I didn't like my flat-mate.

B Complete the web comment with linking words (*and, but, so, because*).

2011 was an important year [1]_____ I met my wife, Ania. We met in an internet chatroom [2]_____ we got on immediately. We started to chat and send emails, [3]_____ we lived in different countries [4]_____ it was difficult for us to be together. Now we live in the UK with our two children.



C Write about an important year in your life. Use linking words (*and, but, so, because*).

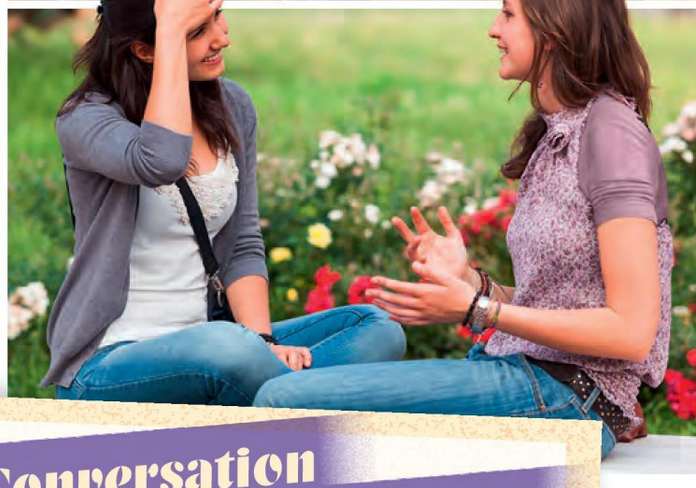
https://polcet.edu.vn

1.3 NICE DAY, ISN'T IT?

F making conversation
P linking
V conversation topics







VOCABULARY

CONVERSATION TOPICS

1 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

1 Do you enjoy **having conversations** with people you don't know?
2 What topics do you usually **talk about**?
3 What do you **say** when somebody **interrupts** you?
4 Do you ever **gossip** about celebrities?
5 Are you good at **telling jokes**?
6 Can you think of any bad conversation habits?

2 A Complete the article with the words in the box.

joke	gossip	saying	conversation
talk	interrupt	tells	

B Work in pairs. What problem does the article describe? Which tips do you think are good advice?

C Cover the article. How many tips can you remember?

Top Conversation Killers

Do you ever find that you're having an interesting [1]_____ *and then suddenly everything goes really quiet and you're not sure why? Next time watch out for these conversation killers.*

'You look tired'
There's nothing worse than when a friend who hasn't seen you for a while [2]_____ you that you're looking tired or stressed.

Me, Me, Me
This is one of the biggest conversation killers. Don't [3]_____ people to talk about yourself. It's a great idea to talk about things you have in common, but just remember to take turns.

'Sorry, what were you [4]_____**?'**
It's always easier to talk than to listen, but learning to listen and being interested in the response is an important conversation skill.

'Have you heard what people are saying about ... ?'
Don't [5]_____ or say rude things about people you know, even if it's only a [6]_____.

Don't be too negative
Try not to [7]_____ about too many negative topics. As they say, 'Laugh and the world laughs with you, cry and you cry alone.'

https://polcet.edu.vn

FUNCTION

MAKING CONVERSATION

3 A 1.5 Listen to two conversations. Which conversation (Conversation 1 or Conversation 2) do you think is better? Why?

B Listen again and complete the responses.

Conversation 1

A: Hi, Davide. This is my friend, Rachel.
B: Hi, Rachel. [1]_____ to meet you.
B: Would you like a drink, Rachel?
C: I'd [2]_____ a coffee, thank you.
B: Where exactly do you come from?
C: I'm [3]_____ Beckley, near Oxford.

Conversation 2

A: Hi, Felicia. Nice day, isn't it?
B: Yes, it's [4]_____.
A: Did you have a good weekend?
B: Yes, it was [5]_____. I didn't do much.
A: Did you watch the match last night?
B: Yes, it was [6]_____.
A: I'll see you later.
B: Yes, see you [7]_____.

4 Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: look at page 160. Student B: look at page 162.

▷ page 128 LANGUAGEBANK



LEARN TO

SOUND NATURAL

5 A 1.6 LINKING Listen to these phrases again. Notice how words are linked.

1 Would‿you like‿a drink?
2 Did‿you have‿a good weekend?
3 This‿is my friend, Rachel.
4 I'd love‿a coffee, thank‿you.
5 Yes,‿it was‿OK.
6 Pleased‿to meet‿you.

B Listen again and repeat.

speakout TIP

Use *so* to help a conversation when you ask another question. *Poland? So, where exactly in Poland do you come from?* You can also use it when you want to change the topic. *So, did you watch the match last night?* Can you add *so* to any questions in Exercise 3B? Practise saying the questions.

SPEAKING

6 A Look at the topics in the box below. Think of five questions you can ask people related to the topics.

films	home	next holiday	food/drink	free time
family	weather	work/studies	weekend	

B Talk to as many different people as possible in the class. Start conversations with them. Try to ask at least three of your questions, and then end the conversation. Be careful not to kill the conversation too quickly.

So, what kind of films do you enjoy?
Where exactly do you live?
So, what do you do in your free time?



https://polcet.edu.vn

1.4 BBC SOMEONE SPECIAL

DVD PREVIEW

1 A **Work in pairs and discuss the questions.**

1 What kinds of programmes do you enjoy watching on television?
2 Which television programmes are popular in your country at the moment?
3 Do you enjoy watching situation comedies (sitcoms)? Why/Why not?

B **Read the programme information and answer the questions.**

1 What is Miranda's problem?
2 Why do you think she finds it difficult to answer Mike?

Miranda

Whatever Miranda tries to do in life, something always goes wrong. Now, she has a boyfriend called Mike, but every time he says the words 'I love you', Miranda panics and doesn't know how to respond. What's the real problem? Is it something to do with her old university friend Gary? And can her best friend, Stevie, help her to work it out?

DVD VIEW

2 A **Watch the DVD. Why can't Miranda say 'I love you' to Mike? What's the problem?**

B **Watch again. Number the sentences in the order you hear them.**

a) 'What was your first love?' 'Doughnuts.'
b) 'You love him, but you're not *in love* with him.'
c) 'When he tells me he loves me, I freak out. Can't say it back.' *1*
d) 'I wouldn't laugh. It's one of the reasons I love you.'
e) 'You're not in love with your boyfriend. It's only fair you split up with him.'
f) 'What truly makes your heart skip?' 'Gary'.

3 A **Who says sentences 1–6: Miranda, Mike, the man, Stevie or Gary? Who are they talking to?**

1 'I'm gonna to have to dash. I will see you later.'
2 'What springs to mind when I say, "What do you love?"'
3 'Now we need to work out how you'll end it.'
4 'I'm going to have to write Mike a letter. It's the only way.'
5 'Listen, I really really need your help. Do you think you could spare a few hours this afternoon?'
6 'I'm in love with Gary!'

B **Watch again to check your answers.**

4 **Work in pairs and answer the questions.**

1 What do you think Miranda should do now?
2 What do you think will happen next?



https://polcet.edu.vn

speakout a special person

4 A Think about people you know. Who is the best person to:

- go on holiday with?
- talk to about your problems?
- borrow money from?
- go out for an evening with?
- invite to your house for dinner?
- work/live with?
- go to a concert/art gallery with?

B Work in pairs and discuss your answers.

5 You are going to talk about an important person in your life. Think about questions 1–6.

1 Who is this person?
2 What is their relationship to you?
3 How did you meet?
4 How often do you see them?
5 What kind of things do you do together?
6 Why is this person important to you?

6 A 1.7 Listen to someone describing a friend and answer the questions.

1 When did they meet?
2 Why are they good friends?
3 Does she say anything negative about her friend?

B Listen again and tick the key phrases you hear.

KEYPHRASES

I've known [name] for …
We met …
We get on really well [because …] …
We've got lots of things in common …
We both enjoy …
One thing I like about [name] is …
The only problem with [name] is …
He/She is one of those people that …
He/She's a great person.

C Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: tell your partner about your special person. Use the key phrases to help. Student B: ask questions to find out more information about him/her.

writeback a competition entry

7 A Read the competition entry below. Underline three reasons why Julie is the writer's best friend.

Is your friend the 'best friend in the world'? Tell us why.

Julie is the best friend in the world because she is always there for me. Julie is the person I call when I have a problem, or if I need to borrow money. She has helped me through some difficult times. We have known each other for nearly twenty years, so we know everything there is to know about each other. We argue sometimes, but we have the same sense of humour, so our arguments don't last very long. I can talk to Julie about anything and I know she will be a friend forever.

B Write an entry for the competition about your best friend or someone special. Use the questions in Exercise 5 to help you.



https://polcet.edu.vn

1.5 LOOKBACK

FREE TIME

1 A Complete the questions with the missing word.

1 How often do you _____ a barbecue?
2 What do you usually do when you have time _____ work/ from your studies?
3 How do you usually _____ time with your family?
4 What kind of things do you hate _____ money on?
5 Where is your favourite place to _____ out?
6 Where do you like to _____ shopping?

B Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

QUESTION FORMS

2 Work in pairs. Complete the application form for your partner. Ask and answer questions using the words in brackets.

A: What is your name?
B: Pedro Gonzales

APPLICATION FORM

Name: (what)
Pedro Gonzales
Age: (how)
Place of birth: (where)
Marital status: (married)
Address: (what)
Telephone number: (what)
Mobile number: (have got)
Email address: (what)
Occupation: (do)
Hobbies: (have)

3 A Choose some of the topics in the boxes below. Write five questions to ask other students.



B Work in groups. Ask and answer the questions.

RELATIONSHIPS

4 A Find five mistakes in this paragraph.

I met Layla at a market. She was selling bread. We started chatting and got well on. At the time I didn't keep a girlfriend, so I asked her on a date. We went to a local bakery! We soon fell to love and I proposed at her after a month. I hid the ring in a piece of cake. Fortunately, she accepted, and she didn't eat the ring! It was a good way to get engaged. A week later we became married.

B Work in pairs and check your answers. Close your books. Student A: re-tell the story. Change two details. Student B: guess the changes.

PAST SIMPLE

5 A Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

On your last holiday:
1 did / go / where / you?
2 why / there / did / go / you?
3 in / you / a / stay / did / hotel?
4 do / day / during / did / you / the / what?
5 evenings / out / the / you / go / in / did?
6 the / weather / hot / was?
7 you / language / speak / what / did?
8 you / friends / make / new / any / did?

B Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in Exercise 5A.

6 A Write a list of ten verbs you learnt in Unit 1. What are the past simple forms?

B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: say a verb. Student B: say the past simple form.

A: meet
B: met

C Now use the verbs from Exercise 6A to make questions.

D Ask and answer the questions.

A: When did you meet your partner?
B: We met in 2006.

MAKING CONVERSATION

7 A Complete the conversations.

Conversation 1
A: Hi, (name) _____. _____ day, isn't it?
B: Yes, it's _____.

Conversation 2
A: This is my _____ (name) _____.
B: Hi. _____ to meet you.

Conversation 3
A: So, _____ you work here?
B: No, I'm a _____.

Conversation 4
A: Where exactly do you _____ from?
B: I'm _____ (place) _____.

Conversation 5
A: Did you have a _____ weekend?
B: Yes, it was _____. I didn't do _____.

Conversation 6
A: Did you _____ the match last night?
B: Yes, it _____ terrible.

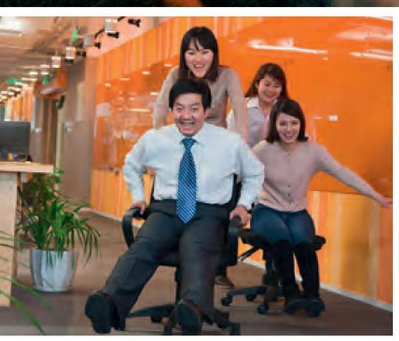
Conversation 7
A: We lost 3–0.
B: Oh _____! I'm _____ to hear that.

Conversation 8
A: I'll _____ you later.
B: Yes, see you _____.

B Work in pairs and practise the conversations.

https://polcet.edu.vn

2 work



THE COMPANY 4U? p18



A RISKY BUSINESS p20



I LIKE WORKING OUTSIDE p22



DREAM COMMUTERS p24

SPEAKING **2.1** Talk about what motivates you at work **2.2** Talk about dangerous jobs **2.3** Discuss likes/dislikes **2.4** Describe your work/life balance

LISTENING **2.1** Listen to interviews about jobs **2.4** Watch an extract from a BBC documentary about commuting

READING **2.2** Read a newspaper article about dangerous jobs **2.4** Understand a survey about work/life balance

WRITING **2.1** Write an email about work experience **2.4** Write a web comment about work/life balance

BBC

INTERVIEWS

What do you do?



https://polcet.edu.vn

2.1 THE COMPANY 4 U?

G present simple and continuous
P word stress
V work



VOCABULARY

WORK

1 Discuss the questions.

1 What are the people doing in the photo?
2 What sort of company is it?
3 Would you like to work for a company like this? Why/Why not?

2 A Work in pairs. Match the words in the box with definitions 1–10.

~~company~~	employee	salary	office	customer
employer	staff	task	boss	bonus

1 a business that makes or sells things or provides services *company*
2 a person who buys products or uses services
3 extra money given to a worker (often for especially good work)
4 a place where many people work at desks
5 a worker
6 a job you need to do
7 a person who manages the workers in the company
8 everyone who works in the company
9 a fixed, regular sum of money given to someone for doing a job
10 a person or business that pays workers to do a job

B 2.1 **WORD STRESS** Listen to the words and repeat.

SPEAKING

3 A Work in pairs. Discuss. What are the most important things for people who work? Number the items below in order of importance. 1 = very important. 8 = not important at all.

interesting tasks
flexible hours/long holidays
a big salary
a chance to develop your skills
big bonuses for good work
good relationships with other employees/customers
a friendly boss
working for a big company

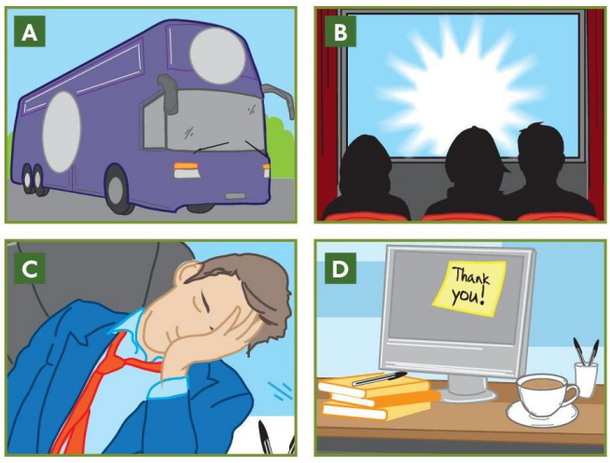
B Compare your ideas with other students.

LISTENING

4 A 2.2 Listen to someone talking about how companies motivate their staff. How are the pictures (A–D) connected to the ideas?

M mo.ti.vate /ˈməʊtəveɪt $ ˈmoʊtəˌveɪt/ *verb* to make someone want to do something: *Teachers should motivate students to stay in school.*

From Longman WordWise Dictionary.



B Listen and check. Which other ideas do they talk about? Which ideas do you think are the best?

5 A 2.3 Listen to three employees describing what they are doing. Tick the activities they mention.

watching a film	choosing a CD	fishing
studying	waiting for a customer	making coffee
having a massage	checking emails	

B Listen again. Answer the questions.

1 What is the 'agreement' between the two shops?
2 What does the company pay for?
3 Why can the woman start work at 1p.m.?

https://polcet.edu.vn

GRAMMAR

PRESENT SIMPLE AND CONTINUOUS

6 A Read sentences a) and b). Answer the questions.

a) This is the clothes shop.
b) I'm having a break.

1 Which sentence describes something that is always true?
2 Which sentence describes a temporary situation?
3 Which sentence uses the present simple?
4 Which sentence uses the present continuous?

B Read sentences a)–d). Answer the questions.

a) I'm choosing my free CD for the week.
b) I'm checking my emails.
c) I'm studying history.
d) Six of us are doing online courses.

1 Which two sentences refer to this exact moment?
2 Which two sentences refer to the general present, but not to this moment?

▷ page 130 LANGUAGEBANK

7 Make two sentences or questions with the prompts. Use the present simple and present continuous.

1 **you / work** on a special task at the moment? on Saturdays?

Are you working on a special task at the moment?
Do you work on Saturdays?

2 **I / look** for a job at the moment / at my emails when I get to work
3 **I / not / use** English for my job / the photocopier at the moment
4 **you / watch** the news on TV every day? / TV right now?
5 **I / not / read** any good books at the moment / a newspaper every morning
6 **you / have** a good time at this party? / a company car?
7 **I / sell** my house / IT products to companies in Asia

8 A Make *you* questions with the prompts. Use the present simple or present continuous.

1 think / your salary / good?

Do you think your salary is good?

2 speak / any other languages?
3 why / learn English?
4 study for / an exam / now?
5 work on / a special project / at the moment?
6 have / your own / office?
7 like / your / boss?

B Work in pairs. Choose four or five questions to ask your partner. Find similarities and differences between you and your partner.

WRITING

STARTING/ENDING AN EMAIL

9 A Look at the phrases below. Which are formal (F) and which are informal (I)?

Starting an email

Dear colleagues *F*
Dear Sir Hi Dear Dr Bryce Hello
Dear All Hi everyone

Introducing the main topic

I am writing about … It's about … Regarding …

Ending an email

See you soon Best wishes Bye for now
I look forward to hearing from you Best regards
Speak soon Take care Cheers Love
Yours sincerely

B Read the email. What work does Vanessa do?

Dear Mr Shaw,

I am writing to apply for the position at your company advertised in JSI. I believe my personal qualities and my experience make me a good candidate for this job.

I worked for Seng Tech for three years, producing designs for apps. Our customers included Sherring Inc. and BTZ Co. I am currently developing mobile apps for two other companies.

I am very motivated by interesting tasks and I am looking for a chance to develop my skills in a bigger company.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely,

Vanessa Chiarollo

C Read the advert and write to BES. Use the prompts below and phrases from Exercise 9A.

1 Say why you're writing and introduce yourself.
2 Say what you're doing now (studying English, etc.).
3 Ask for information about BES's work experience programme.
4 End the email.

BES is an international furniture design company. Based in Ankara, we design and produce household furniture in 15 countries. We are looking for people who want work experience in design, sales and other areas.
Write to Hakan Balik at hbalik@BES.nett.

https://polcet.edu.vn

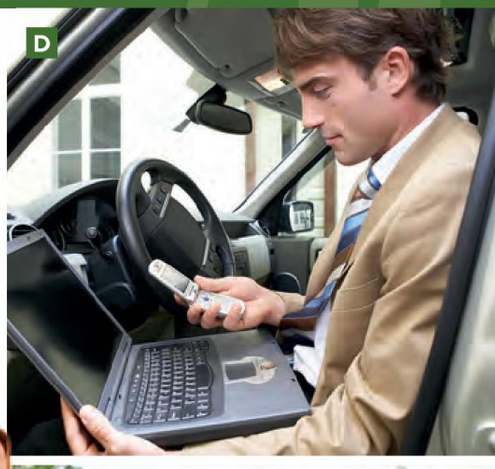
2.2 A RISKY BUSINESS

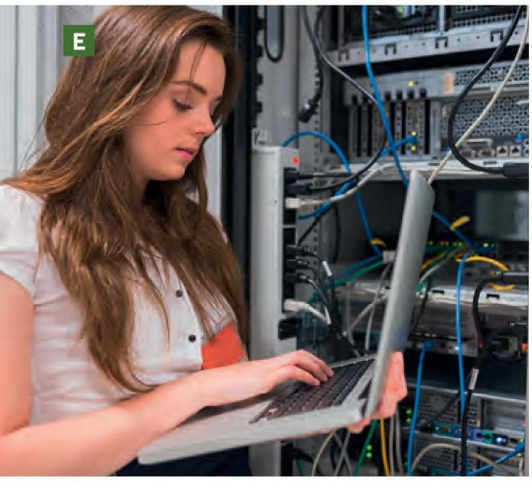
G adverbs of frequency
P stressed syllables
V jobs



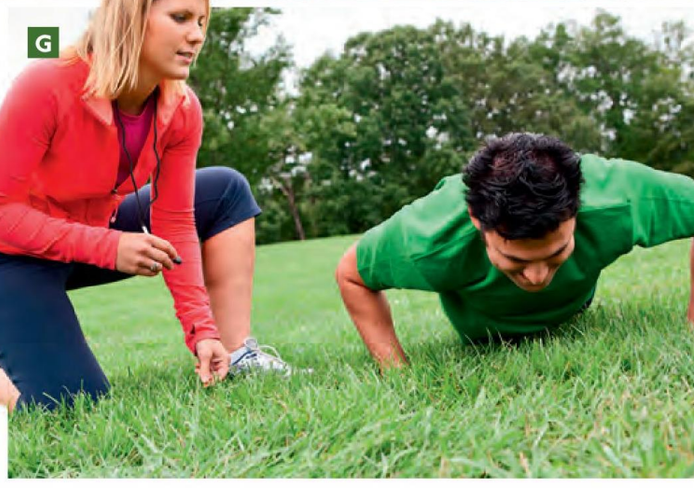












VOCABULARY

JOBS

1 A Work in pairs. Discuss. Which are the best/worst jobs? Think about:

- meeting people
- opportunities to travel
- problems to deal with
- tasks
- hours of work
- salary

B Match the jobs with photos A–G.

sales rep fashion designer IT consultant foreign correspondent personal trainer rescue worker motorcycle courier

C 2.4 **STRESSED SYLLABLES** Listen and repeat. Underline the stressed syllables.

sales rep

speakout TIP

The stressed part of a word or phrase sounds l o n g e r, LOUDER and higher than the other parts. Practise saying new vocabulary, focusing on the stressed parts.

▷ page 152 **PHOTOBANK**

2 A Complete the phrases with the words in the box.

work deal with risk get

1 _____ a good salary/long holidays
2 _____ in a team/under pressure
3 _____ their lives/your health
4 _____ problems/customers

B Use the phrases to talk about the jobs in Exercise 1.

IT consultants get a good salary.

3 A Complete sentences 1–6 with the words in the box.

get team under deal holidays risk

1 People are more motivated when they _____ a good salary.
2 People work better _____ a lot of pressure.
3 It's important that employees get long _____.
4 People who _____ their lives at work should get more money.
5 It's more enjoyable to work in a _____ than alone.
6 These days, people usually _____ with their own IT problems.

B Work in pairs. Discuss. Which of the sentences above do you agree/disagree with? Why?

https://polcet.edu.vn

READING

4 A Work in pairs. Discuss. Which of the jobs in Exercise 1 do you think is the best paid, most interesting or most dangerous? Why?

B Work in groups. Student A: read the text below. Student B: read the text on page 160. Student C: read the text on page 162. Make notes on:

- job
- country
- people interviewed
- why the job is dangerous
- special memories/stories

C Tell your group about your text using the notes.

Danger Rating 6/10


Mountain rescue worker, Austria

Up in the mountains, the view is beautiful. But not for emergency doctor Martin Schmidt, paramedic Marius Adler and helicopter pilot Klaus Hartmann. Their job is to find and rescue people in trouble: climbers caught in an avalanche, injured skiers, even lost walkers. Reporter Lucy Rose met the team and asked them about their work.

Adler says they love their jobs, but they sometimes get angry with the people they rescue. 'Climbers always risk their lives, but when they get into trouble they also risk ours.'

What exactly are the dangers? Hartmann says that, although the sun is shining today, they usually fly in much worse weather conditions, which can be very dangerous. Another problem is that, often, the people they rescue are frightened. They panic, and this makes it difficult for the team.

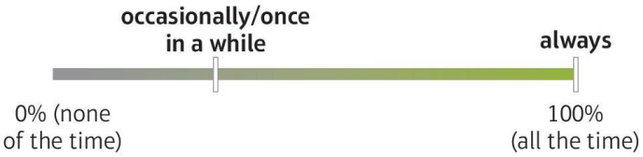
And what are the best things about the job? Hartmann says, 'Saving lives is its own reward.' And occasionally they get a surprise. 'One time we rescued a woman after a skiing accident. She was badly hurt. Later her husband brought us a huge box of chocolates.' The people they rescue, Schmidt explains, hardly ever say thank you!

GRAMMAR

ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY

5 A Look at sentences 1–9. Put the words in bold in the correct place on the line.

1 He **never** worries.
2 **Often** the people they rescue are frightened.
3 The mountain rescuers **sometimes** get angry.
4 It **usually** involves a few broken bones.
5 Life as a jockey is **rarely** safe.
6 These people **always** risk their lives.
7 The people they rescue **hardly ever** say thank you.
8 **Once in a while** jockeys even die during a race.
9 **Occasionally** they get a surprise.



B Read your text again. Underline all the adverbs or expressions of frequency. Look at the other texts to find more examples.

▷ page 130 LANGUAGEBANK

6 A Find and correct the mistakes in sentences 1–6. There is one mistake in each sentence.

1 I work always at night.
2 Once on a while I study at weekends.
3 I ever hardly study alone.
4 I work at home occasional.
5 It is sometime difficult to study and work at the same time.
6 I don't usual miss classes because of work.

B Write four sentences about your job or studies.

I deal with customers once in a while.

C Compare with a partner.

SPEAKING

7 A Work in groups. You are making a TV programme about dangerous jobs. Discuss the questions and choose three jobs for your programme.

1 Which jobs are dangerous? Why? How often are the people in dangerous situations?
2 Which jobs are the most interesting for your TV audience?
3 Who will you interview for the programme? What questions will you ask them?

B Work with another group and compare your ideas.

https://polcet.edu.vn

2.3 I LIKE WORKING OUTSIDE

F expressing likes/dislikes
P intonation: sound interested
V types of work



VOCABULARY

TYPES OF WORK

1 A Work in pairs. Look at the types of work below. Answer the questions.

education | the fashion industry | sales and marketing | retail | the tourist industry | accounts | the entertainment industry | the food industry

1 Which industry does a chef, cook and waiter work in?
2 Which industry does a model and fashion designer work in?
3 What types of jobs are there in the entertainment industry?
4 What types of jobs are there in retail?

B Look at photos A–D. Which industries are the people working in?

FUNCTION

EXPRESSING LIKES/DISLIKES

2 A 2.5 Listen to an interview with someone about his job. What job is it? What does he like about it?

B Listen again and complete the sentences.

1 I **like** _____ outside.
2 I **can't stand** _____ at a desk all day.
3 I **absolutely love** _____.
4 I **don't like** _____ in a team. I prefer working alone.
5 I **don't mind** _____ my hands dirty.
6 I'**m keen on** _____ new things.
7 I **hate** _____ under pressure.
8 I'**m not very keen on** _____ for a company. I want to be my own boss.

C Read the sentences. Which phrases in bold are very positive (+ +), positive (+), negative (–), or very negative (– –)? Which are not positive or negative (*)?

3 A Which of the statements in Exercise 2B is true for you?

B Work in pairs. Find out three things that your partner loves/likes/hates and write sentences about them. Use the phrases in Exercise 2B to help.

Maria can't stand smoking.

▷ page 130 **LANGUAGEBANK**

LEARN TO

RESPOND AND ASK MORE QUESTIONS

4 A 2.6 Read and listen to the extracts from the audio script. Notice how the listener responds and complete the phrases. The first has been done for you.

M: One good thing about my job is that I like working outside.
W: I [1] *see* .
M: I travel a lot and I absolutely love travelling, particularly in South America and Australia.
W: Right. And what [2] _____ your colleagues, people you work with?
M: I don't like working in a team. I prefer working alone.
W: [3] _____ **? And what about** the type of work?
M: You're always discovering new things.
W: That's great. It [4] _____ **wonderful.**

B 2.7 **INTONATION: sound interested** Listen and repeat the phrases in bold. Notice the intonation. Copy the intonation to sound interested.

C Look at audio script 2.6 in Exercise 4A. Underline other examples of comments and questions. Write them in the table.

comments	*I see.*
questions	*And what about …?*

https://polcet.edu.vn









5 A Work in pairs. Student A: complete sentences 1–4. Student B: complete sentences 5–8.

1 I got a new job as a _____.
2 Yesterday I bought a new _____.
3 I'm going on holiday to _____.
4 Last night I saw _____.
5 I've always wanted to _____.
6 Yesterday I learnt how to _____.
7 I watched a great film about _____.
8 This morning I met _____.

B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: read a sentence. Student B: respond and ask a follow-up question.

A: *I just got a new job as a ski instructor!*
B: *Really? When do you start?*

SPEAKING

6 A Work in pairs. What is the perfect job for you? Think about your job now or a job you'd like in the future. Make notes on the:

- industry (entertainment, tourism, medical …)
- type of work (creative, manual, information-based …)
- skills (networking, writing, planning …)
- hours (9-5, flexible …)
- location (outside, in an office, travelling …)
- people (work alone, in a team, in a large corporation …)

B Work with other students. Talk about your perfect job. As you listen, respond and ask questions.

My perfect job is in the tourist industry. I like meeting new people and I absolutely love showing people around my city.

https://polcet.edu.vn

2.4 BBC DREAM COMMUTERS

DVD PREVIEW

1 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

1 How do you get to college/work?
2 How long would you be prepared to travel to school/work (one hour/three hours)?

2 A Read the programme information and answer the questions.

1 What was Justin unhappy about before?
2 What did he decide to do?

The Money Programme: Dream Commuters

The Money Programme is a BBC documentary series. Dream Commuters tells the story of a man who was **fed up with** his journey to work and his lifestyle. Every day there was a lot of **traffic** on the roads and the **commute** to work took a long time. He wasn't happy with his work/life balance. So he bought a **property** in France and took his family to live there. He now takes cheap **flights** to work. He is one of a growing number of **commuters** who live in another country. He says it has **transformed** his life.



B Match the words in bold in Exercise 2A with meanings 1–7.

1 completely changed
2 journeys in a plane
3 people who travel to work
4 cars, motorbikes, etc. on the road
5 journey to work
6 a building or land that you own
7 unhappy with something, so you want to change it

DVD VIEW

3 A Watch the DVD. Do you think Justin's life is better now? Why/Why not?

B Are the sentences below True (T) or False (F)?

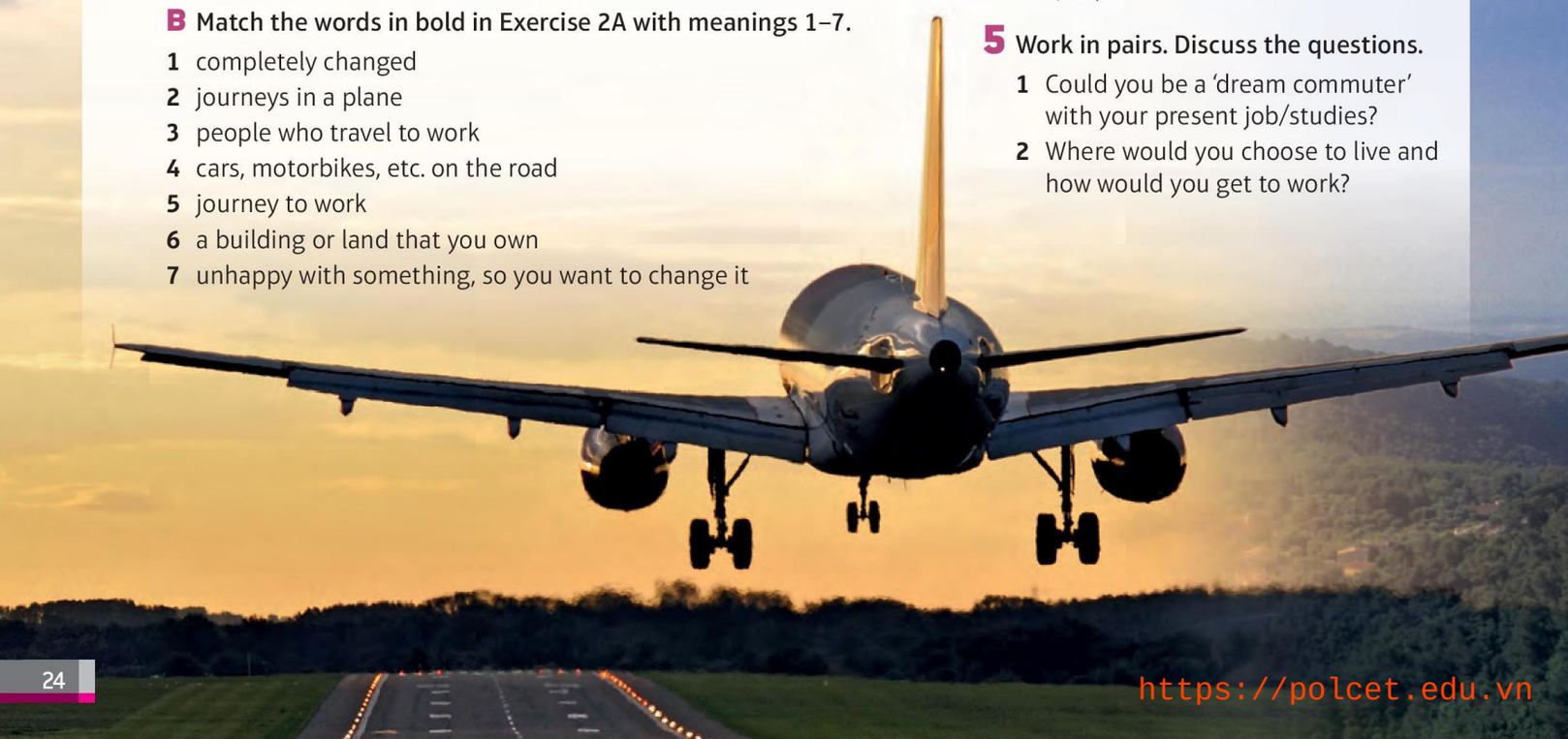
1 More and more people are choosing to live abroad and commute to their jobs in the UK.
2 Justin is manager of an online business based in the UK.
3 Justin's commute costs him hundreds of pounds every week.
4 Justin's journey home is about 70 miles.
5 Justin's wife and children stay in France while he travels to the UK every week.

4 Watch the DVD again. What exactly do they say? Underline the correct alternative.

1 'We were fed up with *waiting in the airport/the commuting and the traffic*.'
2 'He's one of a group of *travellers/commuters* who take the same flight to Toulouse every week.'
3 'We looked on the internet and we saw properties available *much cheaper/more expensive* than in Britain.'
4 'That's the house down there. With the *swimming pool/terrace*.'
5 'We've just transformed our *house/lifestyle*.

5 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

1 Could you be a 'dream commuter' with your present job/studies?
2 Where would you choose to live and how would you get to work?



https://polcet.edu.vn

speakout work/life balance

6 Read the text and discuss the questions.

In the UK, people work 43.5 hours per week on average. Men work 46.9 hours. In France, the average working week is 35 hours. Research also shows that 16 percent of UK workers work over 60 hours per week. At home in the UK, working parents play with their children for only 25 minutes per day. 1 out of 8 (12.5 percent) fathers see their children only at the weekend.

1 Is the work/life balance the same in your country?
2 Do you think people work too much? What problems can this cause?
3 Are you happy with your work/life or study/life balance? Why/Why not?

7 2.8 Listen to an interview with a student. Does she have a good work/life balance? Tick the key phrases you hear.

KEYPHRASES

How much time do you spend … (sleeping/relaxing/commuting)?
I spend a lot of time … (working/doing exercise)
Do you ever … (have a holiday)?
What about your … (social life/weekends)?
How do you spend your weekends?

8 A Write some questions about work/life balance. Use the things in the box to help you.

exercise/sport social life family
weekends enjoyable hobbies holidays
work/study habits

How much time do you spend with your family?

B Work in groups and take turns. Ask and answer your questions. Find someone who has a similar work/life balance to you.

writeback a web comment

9 A Read the entry to www.worklife247.nett. Answer the questions.

1 Is this a stressful job? Why/Why not?
2 Would you like a job like this?

22-10-16 Posting 1

I'm a personal trainer. I eat well and I do a lot of exercise. I spend about five hours a day working with clients. In general, I think my work/life balance is good. I take time off every few months just to relax, and I rarely get stressed. Once in a while I go out partying. For me, a balanced lifestyle is really important. When I was younger, I worried if I missed a day of exercise. These days I don't worry about it.

My only problem is the one-hour commute. I hate taking the train every day and it's expensive. I'm planning to move house so I can live near the gym where I work and walk to work every morning.

Comment

B Think about your work/life balance and write a comment for www.worklife247.nett.



https://polcet.edu.vn

2.5 LOOKBACK

G PRESENT SIMPLE AND CONTINUOUS

1 **Work in pairs. Which verb can you use for a) and b)? Put each verb into the present simple or present continuous.**

1 **a)** Don't switch off the TV! I *'m watching* it.
b) I love that programme! I *watch* it every week.
2 **a)** Can you call me back later? I _____ my homework.
b) I try to keep fit. I _____ yoga and aerobics every day.
3 **a)** I love tennis, but I _____ badly.
b) Sorry, I can't hear you because Matthew _____ the piano.
4 **a)** I _____ about twenty text messages a day, usually to friends.
b) She _____ a book. It will be published next year.
5 **a)** Daddy can't come home now. He _____ late at the office.
b) Usually he _____ from 9a.m. to 5p.m. from Monday to Friday.
6 **a)** I like to spend time with friends. That's what _____ me happy.
b) I _____ some coffee. Do you want some?
7 **a)** She loves the school. She _____ a lot of friends there.
b) Jill _____ some problems with her phone. Can you check it?
8 **a)** He only met his real father last month. They _____ to know each other now.
b) In the UK, about 50 percent of married couples _____ divorced.
9 **a)** She always _____ a book to her son before he goes to sleep.
b) I _____ his new book at the moment. It's really good.
10 **a)** Hi Tim! I'm in town for a week. I _____ an old friend.
b) When we go to London, we usually _____ the National Gallery.

2 A **Make six true sentences about your life/job. Use a word/phrase from each box.**

at home	my friends	in bed	at the weekend
in the bath	on Friday evening	my family	
during my holidays	at my desk		

work	drink	play	do	sing	eat	write	talk
call	visit						

often	sometimes	rarely	never	always	usually
once in a while	occasionally	hardly ever			

B **Work in pairs and compare your sentences.**

A: I rarely work at my desk.
B: Do you often work at home?

G ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY

3 A **Match questions 1–7 with answers a)–g).**

1 How often do you play sport?
2 Do you usually get up before 7a.m.?
3 How often do you phone your mother?
4 Do you eat a lot of meat?
5 How many texts do you send in a week?
6 Do you ever go camping?
7 How often do you read a newspaper?

a) Yes, my children wake me up at 5.30a.m.
b) I don't know. Maybe twenty.
c) Very rarely. I watch the news on television.
d) I play football once in a while.
e) No, hardly ever. I prefer fish.
f) Once a week. We always speak on Sundays.
g) Yes, occasionally. But it usually rains.

B **Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer questions 1–7.**

V WORK AND JOBS

4 **Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: choose a word/phrase from the box. Student B: choose another word/phrase and explain the connection between them.**

IT consultant	office	staff	work in a team
foreign correspondent	sales rep	risk their lives	
fashion designer	boss	deal with customers	task
motorcycle courier	company	get a good salary	
opportunity	rescue worker	personal trainer	
deal with problems			

***A:** IT consultant*
***B:** An IT consultant deals with problems related to technology.*

F EXPRESSING LIKES/DISLIKES

5 A **Work in pairs. How well do you know your partner? Think of questions for answers 1–6.**

1 I absolutely love it.
2 I can't stand it.
3 I don't like it very much.
4 I don't mind it.
5 I'm not very keen on it.
6 I like it.

B **Ask your partner the questions. Ask follow-up questions to find out more.**

***A:** Do you like Italian food?*
***B:** I absolutely love it.*
***A:** What's your favourite dish?*
***B:** Spaghetti Bolognese.*
***A:** Really? How often do you eat it?*

https://polcet.edu.vn

3 time out





FREE IN NYC p28



RELAX! p30



CAN I TAKE A MESSAGE? p32



RIO DE JANEIRO p34

SPEAKING **3.1** Talk about your future plans **3.2** Discuss how you spend your free time **3.3** Make and receive phone calls **3.4** Plan a perfect day out

LISTENING **3.1** Listen to a radio programme about going out in New York **3.3** Understand some problem phone calls **3.4** Watch an extract from a BBC travel programme about visiting Rio de Janeiro

READING **3.2** Read about how people spend their free time around the world

WRITING **3.1** Write an email invitation **3.4** Write a plan of a perfect day

BBC

INTERVIEWS

What do you like doing in your free time?



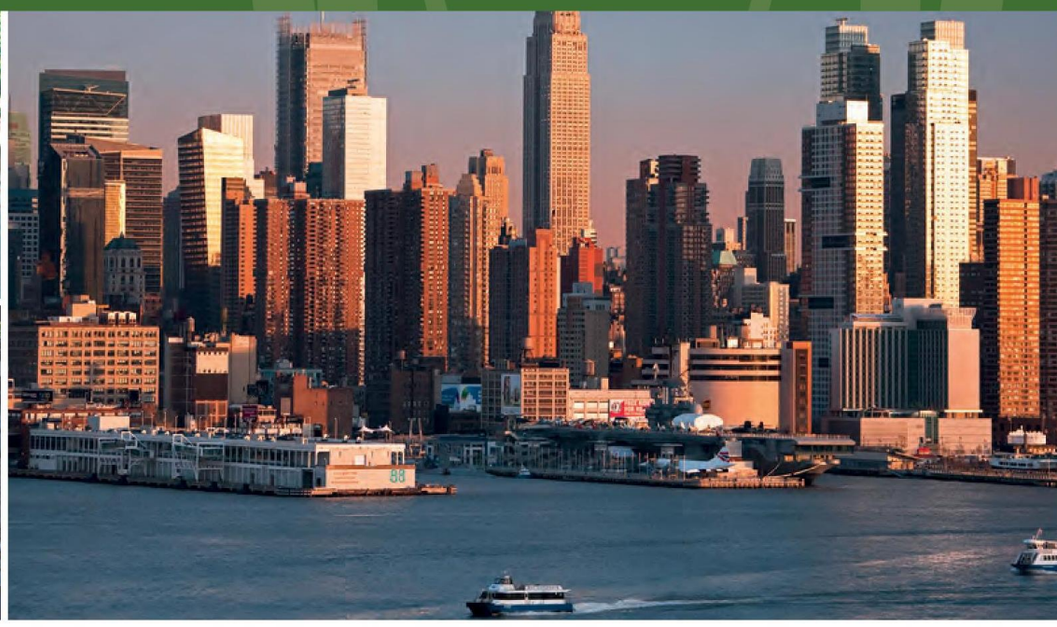
https://polcet.edu.vn

3.1 FREE IN NYC

G present continuous/*be going to* for future
P fast speech: *going to*
V time out





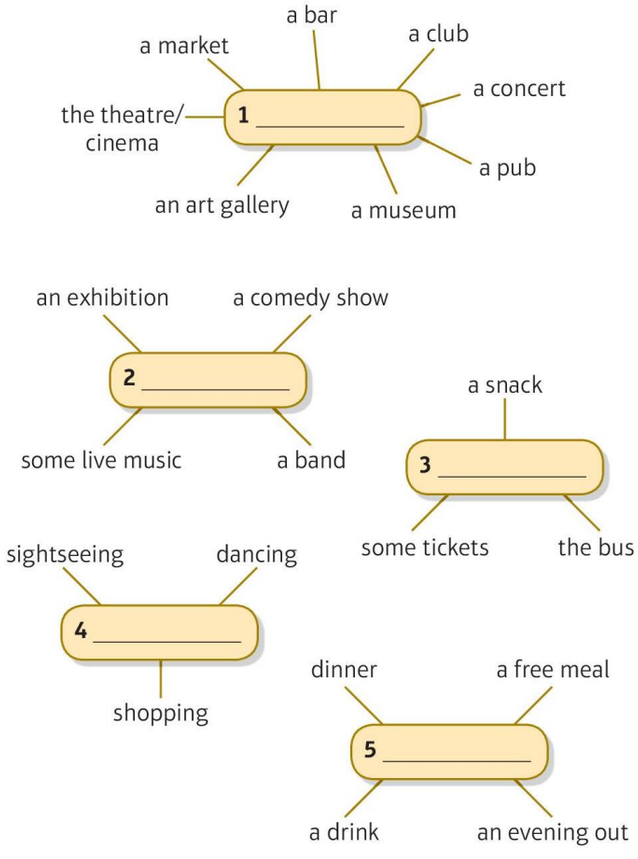


VOCABULARY

TIME OUT

1 A Complete the word webs with the verbs in the box.

have	go	get	see	go to



B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer questions using the phrases in Exercise 1A.

A: How often do you go to a museum?
B: Not very often.

▷ page 153 PHOTOBANK

LISTENING

2 A Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

1 What kind of things do you like to do when you visit a city?
2 Where can you go/what things can you do for free, or very cheaply, where you live?

B 3.1 Listen to a radio programme. Answer the questions.

1 Is New York an expensive city to live in?
2 Are there lots of free things to do there?
3 How much money do the journalists have to spend?
4 What do they have to do?

3 A Complete the information about Rafael and Carmen's plans.

Rafael

1 He plans to start the day with a delicious bagel and then to spend the morning in _____.
2 He's going to the _____ of American Finance.
3 He's taking the Staten Island Ferry to see _____ of New York.
4 In the evening, he's going to see some _____ music.

Carmen

5 She's going to see a free _____ exhibition.
6 She's going to Times _____ because she likes the atmosphere.
7 She's going to an _____ restaurant near there.
8 In the evening, she's going to a _____ class.

B Listen to the programme again to check your answers. Which places in the photos do the speakers talk about?

C Work in pairs. Discuss. What do you think of the two plans? Which things would you like/not like to do?

https://polcet.edu.vn









GRAMMAR

PRESENT CONTINUOUS/*BE GOING TO* FOR FUTURE

4 A Read sentences a)–d) and answer the questions.

a) I'm going to see a free art exhibition.
b) I'm meeting a friend.
c) I'm going to see some live music.
d) I'm not going running.

1 Do the sentences refer to the present or the future?
2 Is there a definite time and place for the plans?
3 What tenses do the sentences use?

B 3.2 **FAST SPEECH: *going to***
Listen to the pronunciation of *going to* in fast speech /ˈgʌnə/. Listen and repeat the sentences.

▷ page 132 **LANGUAGEBANK**

5 A Make sentences or questions with the prompts. Use the present continuous or *be going to*.

1 we / go / cinema / Friday
2 you / go / stay / at / home / this evening?
3 she / not / work / this weekend
4 what time / we / meet / tomorrow?
5 I / go / watch / football match / later
6 they / go out / for a pizza / Saturday

B Change two sentences so they are true for you.

C Work in pairs and compare ideas.

SPEAKING

6 A Think about your future plans. Make notes about:

- places/people you plan to visit
- a film you want to see
- something delicious you want to eat

	you	your partner
tonight	*visit friend*	
this weekend		
next week/month		
later this year/next year		

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer questions about your plans (What? Where? Who with? Why?). Add notes to the table.

A: *What are you going to do tonight?*
B: *I'm going to visit an old friend.*

WRITING

INVITATIONS

7 A Put the emails in the correct order.

To

Hi Sonia – I'm going to be in New York next week. Sue and I are meeting for a drink on Tuesday evening at 6.30p.m. Would you like to come?
Annabel ☐

To

I'd love to. Sounds great! See you there.
S ☐

To

We're going out for a meal. Do you want to meet us for dinner? We're having a pizza at Mario's at 8p.m.
A ☐

To

Great to hear from you. I'm sorry, but I'm busy. I'm doing an exercise class from 6p.m. to 7.30p.m. What are you doing afterwards?
Sonia ☐

B Look at the emails in Exercise 7A. Underline two phrases for inviting and two responses.

C Write emails with the prompts.

To

Hi Matt
What / you / do / tonight? A few people / come / watch / football / my house. Want / come?
Ali

To

Tilly
What / do / weekend? Would / like / dancing / Saturday night?
Frank

To

Ali
Great / hear. Love / to. Time / everyone / come?
Matt

To

Sorry / busy / Saturday evening. Want / go cinema / Sunday?
T

To

That / great / idea. Love / to. What / want / see?
Frank

D Work in pairs. Choose an activity from Exercise 6 and write an email inviting another pair to the event.

https://polcet.edu.vn

G questions without auxiliaries
P stress in compound nouns
V places to visit

VOCABULARY

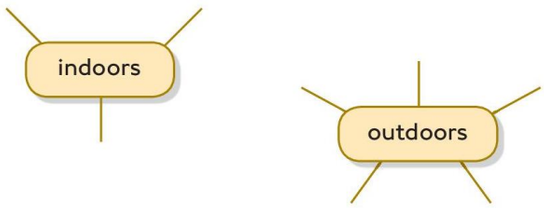
PLACES TO VISIT

1 A Look at the words in the box and answer the questions.

1 Are they usually indoors or outdoors?
2 What free time activities do we usually do in these places?

concert hall	countryside	sports field
nightclub	street market	shopping mall
nature trail	waterfront	

B Write the words in the correct place and add as many other places as you can in one minute. Compare with other students.



2 A 3.3 **STRESS IN COMPOUND NOUNS** Listen to the words in the box in Exercise 1A. Underline the stressed syllables. Which word is usually stressed in compound nouns (nouns made of two words)?

concert hall

B Listen again and repeat.

READING

3 A Work in pairs. Read the questions about how different nationalities spend their free time, and guess the answers.

1 Who spends the most time on the internet?
2 What is the world's most popular sport?
3 Who spends the most time outdoors?
4 Which country has the most bars per person?
5 Which country has the most popular galleries and museums?
6 Which nation watches the most TV?
7 Which country parties the most?
8 Who exercises the most?

B Read the magazine article to find the answers.

C Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

1 Is there any information in the text that surprises you? Why?
2 How do people spend their free time in your country? Are the activities in 1–8 popular?



How the World Spends its Free time

1 Internet

People from Canada spend, on average, 43.5 hours per week online, 8 hours longer than the next highest, the USA. One reason: Canada has long, cold winters so people spend lots of time indoors.

2 Sport

Football is king. In second place, surprisingly, is cricket. Only a few nations play the game seriously, but it's very popular in India, which has 1.2 billion people.

3 Outdoors

New Zealanders spend the most time outdoors. The countryside is perfect for hiking, mountain climbing, and water sports. If you live in New Zealand, you're never more than two hours' drive from the sea. And then there is the rugby, too …

4 Bars

Spain has six bars per 1,000 inhabitants, easily the highest number. In Spain, a bar is for families, not just drinkers. It's a meeting place and often an eating place (try the tapas!).



5 Galleries and Museums

The UK has six of the top 20 most visited art galleries/museums in the world, including the National Gallery, the British Museum and Tate Modern.

https://polcet.edu.vn



6 TV

The biggest TV-watchers are in Thailand. They spend 22.4 hours a week watching TV. In second place comes the Philippines (21 hours) and in third place, Egypt (20.9 hours), famous for its never-ending soap operas!

7 Party!

It's impossible to say who parties the most, but Brazil's annual carnival makes it a good choice. Some of the best cities for partying include Bangkok (friendly people, great nightclubs), Berlin (live music scene), and the island of Ibiza (dance music).

8 Exercising

The biggest exercisers are people from Greece and Estonia. Over 80 percent of people in those countries exercise regularly. In both countries, football and the Olympic sports are the most popular, but Estonia has one very special game: ice cricket!





GRAMMAR

QUESTIONS WITHOUT AUXILIARIES

4 Read the examples and answer questions 1–3.

a) Subject questions

*Question: **Who** exercises the most?*
*Answer: **Greeks** exercise the most.*

b) Object questions

*Question: What did **you** do last night?*
*Answer: **I** went to a party.*

1 Which question asks us to name the subject (the people who do the action): a) or b)?
2 Which question asks for other information about the subject: a) or b)?
3 Which type of question uses the auxiliary?

▷ page 132 LANGUAGEBANK

5 Complete the questions for the answers in italics with the words in the box.

makes	did	Who (x 2)	won	Which	do	is

1 _____ invented basketball?
A Canadian called James Naismith invented basketball.
2 _____ country makes the most films?
India makes the most films.
3 What _____ people do when it's too cold to go out?
They watch TV or read!
4 _____ exercises more: the Japanese or the Germans?
The Germans exercise more.
5 Which sport _____ Brazil famous for?
Brazil is famous for football.
6 Who _____ the first football World Cup?
Uruguay won the first World Cup.
7 Which country _____ the most cars?
China makes the most cars.
8 What _____ you do last night?
I stayed at home.

SPEAKING

6 A Ask other students questions to find out:

1 who listens to music the most frequently
How often do you listen to music?
2 who exercises the most
Do you do a lot of exercise?
3 who spends the most time on the internet
4 who regularly goes to art galleries and/or museums
5 who has been to the theatre or cinema in the last four months
6 who goes to the most parties
7 who watches the most TV
8 who is the biggest sports fan

B As a whole class, answer the questions in Exercise 6A.

Juan listens to music most frequently. He listens to music on the way to and from work and for two hours every evening!

https://polcet.edu.vn

3.3 CAN I TAKE A MESSAGE?

F making a phone call
P linking: *can*
V collocations



SPEAKING

1 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

1 Do you prefer speaking on the phone or in person?
2 Have you ever made a call or taken a message in English? What happened?

VOCABULARY

COLLOCATIONS

2 A Look at phrases 1–7 below. Have you done any of these on the phone recently? Have you done any in English?

1 book a table
2 arrange to meet friends
3 have a chat
4 cancel a booking/reservation
5 check train times
6 change a ticket
7 talk business

B Work in pairs and compare your answers.

A: Have you booked a table on the phone recently?
B: Yes, I booked a table at a restaurant last week.

FUNCTION

MAKING A PHONE CALL

3 A 3.4 Listen to four people making phone calls. Why are they phoning?

B Listen again and complete the notes.

Conversation 1

Como's RESTAURANT
Sun. May 16: Jack Hopper, table for _____ people.
Time: _____.

Conversation 2

RSA THEATRE
2 tickets for James _____.
New date: _____.

Conversation 3

Dinner with Mary and the gang, Pauly's at _____ on _____ night.

Conversation 4

Date: 22nd August. Time: 2.20. Witherton's Ltd
To: Ally Sanders. Caller: Kim Brower.
Message: Cancel _____. Please call back.

4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

it's	back	for	leave	here	take	can

Start the call

Caller: Hello, this is Andy./Hello, [1]_____ Andy. (NOT ~~*I am Andy*~~)
Receiver: Hello, Paul speaking.

Ask to speak to someone …

Caller: [2]_____ I speak to … ?
Receiver: Who's calling?

When the person the caller wants isn't there …

Caller: Can I [3]_____ a message?
Receiver: I'm afraid she's not [4]_____ at the moment. Can I [5]_____ a message? I'll ask her to call you [6]_____.

Finish the call

Caller: See you soon. Goodbye.
Receiver: Thanks [7]_____ calling. See you soon. Goodbye.

https://polcet.edu.vn



5 A Underline the correct alternative to complete the phone conversations.

Conversation 1

Sasha: Hello. Sasha [1]*here/speaks*.
Mustafa: Hi, [2]*I'm/it's* Mustafa.
Sasha: Hi, Mustafa. How are you?
Mustafa: I'm fine, thanks. How about you?
Sasha: Very well, thanks.
Mustafa: Are you busy? Do you want to have lunch in that Turkish place on Broad Street?
Sasha: That sounds good. What time?
Mustafa: One o'clock?
Sasha: Great.
Mustafa: OK. [3]*Speak/See* you soon.
Sasha: OK. Bye.

Conversation 2

Receptionist: Anderson Products.
Sasha: Hello. Can I [4]*connect/speak* to the HR Manager?
Receptionist: One moment. Who's [5]*called/calling*?
Sasha: It's Sasha Barnes here.
Receptionist: I'm afraid he [6]*isn't/not* here at the moment. Can I take a [7]*message/call*?
Sasha: Please tell him to call me [8]*return/back*. I'm waiting in the Turkish restaurant!

B Work in pairs and practise the conversations. Take turns to change roles.

▷ page 132 LANGUAGEBANK

LEARN TO

MANAGE PHONE PROBLEMS

6 A Look at the phrases in bold in the extracts below and match them to problems a)–e).

a) we need to hear something again *2, 6*
b) the speaker is speaking too fast
c) the speaker is speaking too quietly
d) when we are not sure the information is correct
e) the speaker isn't sure the listener heard anything

Extract 1

C: OK, one moment. [1]**Can I just check?** What's the name, please?
D: The tickets are booked in the name of James King.
C: [2]**Sorry, I didn't catch that. Did you say** King?
D: James King.
C: OK, yes. Two tickets for July the tenth. What date would you like to change to?
D: What dates do you still have seats for?
C: There's nothing on the twelfth or thirteenth. There are two seats for the eleventh, but they're separate. We have …
D: [3]**Sorry, can you slow down, please?**

Extract 2

E: Hello?
F: Hello, it's Mary here. Hello? [4]**Can you hear me OK?** It's Mary here.

Extract 3

F: Are you doing anything on Saturday? Because a few of us are going out for dinner.
E: Sorry, Mary, [5]**can you speak up, please?** I'm at the station and I can't hear a thing.

Extract 4

H: It's 01823 2766.
G: [6]**Can you repeat that, please?**

B 3.5 **LINKING: *can*** Listen and repeat the phrases. Notice how *can* and *you* are linked in connected speech: /kənju:/

7 A 3.6 Listen and write an appropriate response.

B 3.7 Listen to check.

speakout TIP

Before you make a phone call, think carefully about the words you will use. How will you start the conversation? What information do you want? Write down some key words that you will use and expect to hear.

SPEAKING

8 Work in pairs. Student A: turn to page 160. Student B: turn to page 162.

https://polcet.edu.vn

3.4 BBC RIO DE JANEIRO

DVD PREVIEW

1 **Work in pairs and discuss.**

1 When you visit a new city, what kind of things do you like to do?
2 Do you like to see and do the things a tourist would do, or do you prefer to spend time with the local people? Why?

2 A **Work in pairs and discuss.**

1 What do you know about Rio de Janeiro in Brazil?
2 Would you like to go there? Why/Why not?

B **Read the programme information. What kind of things do you think the locals will do in Rio?**

Going Local: Rio

Going Local takes its presenters to fantastic cities around the world and asks them to explore the city by doing a series of challenges. However, to complete the challenges, they need to throw away the guidebook and ask the people who know best – the locals. In this episode Rafael Estophania travels to Rio de Janeiro, the city of sand and samba, to find out how the *cariocas* (locals) spend their time.



DVD VIEW

3 A **Which of these activities do you think the presenter tries to do?**

1 find somewhere good to eat
2 use public transport with good views
3 eat exotic fruit
4 play a game with the locals
5 dance samba
6 play music

B **Watch the DVD to find out.**

4 A **Correct the information in the sentences.**

1 Rio is the home of sunshine, ~~*salsa*~~ and the Sugarloaf Mountain. *samba*
2 You can view all the *favelas* from the train.
3 The locals tell him to go to the supermarket to find exotic fruit.
4 The cashew nut tastes like a mixture of strawberries and lemons.
5 The men like to play frescoball in the park.
6 They play music with a local band on the street.

B **Watch the DVD again to check your answers.**

5 **Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.**

1 Would you enjoy any of the things the presenter does? Which ones?
2 When did you last do any of these things? Where were you?



https://polcet.edu.vn

speakout a day in your city

6 A 3.8 Listen to Alessandro talking about his plans for a day out in Pisa. Number the activities in the order he talks about them.

a) have a pizza _____
b) go to a market _____
c) have a coffee __1__
d) walk through the old city _____
e) have lunch in a restaurant _____
f) go to a park _____

B Listen again and use the key phrases to complete sentences 1–6.

KEYPHRASES

We're starting the day …
We're going to …
Afterwards, for lunch we're …
In the afternoon, we're planning to …
In the evening, we're …
It's going to be …

1 … spend the morning walking through the market.
2 … a day to remember.
3 … with a coffee and a fresh pastry.
4 … go a little outside Pisa.
5 … going back towards the Leaning Tower.
6 … going to one of the best restaurants I know.

7 A Work in groups. You are going to plan 24 hours in a city of your choice. Plan your day in detail. Try to include areas that only locals would know about. Use questions 1–6 to help you.

1 Which city are you planning to visit?
2 What are you going to do there?
3 How are you going to get around?
4 What are you going to eat/drink? Where?
5 What are you planning for the evening?
6 What is going to make the day special?

B Work with other students and tell them about your plans. Which plans do you think are the best?

writeback an invitation

8 Write an invitation. Describe the day you have planned and give it to someone in another group. Use the emails on page 29 to help you.



https://polcet.edu.vn

3.5 LOOKBACK

V TIME OUT

1 Cross out one phrase which is not possible in each sentence.

1 I went to *a bar/sightseeing/the market.*
2 Do you want to get *the bus/ a snack/an art gallery*?
3 They went to *the art gallery/ the museum/a snack.*
4 She has gone *a pub/ sightseeing/dancing.*
5 Can we have *a club/dinner/ a drink*?

G PRESENT CONTINUOUS/*BE GOING TO* FOR FUTURE

2 A Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

1 are / what / doing / tonight / you?
2 you / weekend / are / this / doing / special / anything?
3 dinner / evening / is / this / your / who / cooking?
4 you / holiday / are / on / going / when?
5 are / going / city / you / to / visit / which / next?
6 after / to / are / lesson / going / the / what / do / you?

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.

V PLACES TO VISIT

3 Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: choose a word from the box and describe it. Student B: guess the word.

concert hall	countryside
sports field	nightclub
street market	shopping mall
nature trail	waterfront

It's a place where …

A: It's a place where people play outdoor sports.
B: A sports field.

G QUESTIONS WITHOUT AUXILIARIES

4 A Make questions with the prompts. Add a question word and put the verb into the correct form.

1 famous works / include / *Romeo and Juliet* and *Hamlet*?
Whose famous works include Romeo and Juliet and Hamlet?
2 be / an actor / before / he became US President?
3 1975 Queen album / include / the song *Bohemian Rhapsody*?
4 be / a fourth great Renaissance painter, besides Leonardo, Michelangelo and Titian?
5 'John' / win / an Oscar for his song *Can you Feel the Love Tonight* from *The Lion King*?
6 Bob Marley song / include / the words *Let's get together and feel alright*?
7 watery Italian city / have / an international art exhibition every two years?
8 member of the Dion family sell / 200 million records before 2007?
9 hit songs / include / *I'm like a bird*, *Promiscuous* and *Maneater*?

B Do the quiz above. Each answer begins with the last two letters of the previous answer.

1 Shakespeare
2 Re _ _ _ _
3 _ _ight at the Ope_ _
4 _ _pha_ _
5 _ _t_ _
6 _ _e Lo_ _
7 _ _ni_ _
8 _ _ li _ _
9 _ _ lly Furtado

C Check your answers on page 160.

F MAKING A PHONE CALL

5 A Complete the phone call with the words in the box.

here	it's	back	like	can

A: Hello there, [1]_____ Billy Blue.
B: Hello, Billy. How are you?
A: I'm absolutely fine, thank you.
B: So, Bill, what [2]_____ I do for you?
A: I'd [3]_____ to speak to Mrs Chow.
B: Sorry, she's not [4]_____ right now.
A: Any idea when she'll be [5]_____?
B: Never. Today she got the sack.*

*If you *get the sack*, it means you lose your job.

B Complete the message with the words in the box.

call	leave	this	message	
busy				

Hello, [1]_____ is Pete and Paul.
Sorry, there's no one here at all.
We're probably [2]_____, in a meeting,
Or maybe in a restaurant, eating,
Or maybe in a bar watching a game,
But [3]_____ a [4]_____ and your name.
We'll [5]_____ you back some time soon,
And pigs might fly* around the Moon.

**Pigs might fly* is an idiom that means 'it will never happen'.

C Work in pairs and take turns. Read the conversation in Exercise 5A and the message in Exercise 5B. Concentrate on the rhythm.

https://polcet.edu.vn

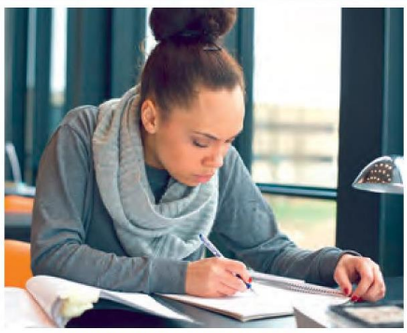
4 great minds



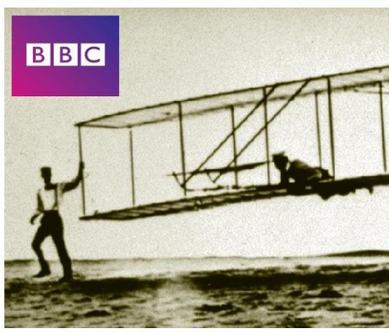
HIDDEN TALENT p38



SCHOOLS OF THOUGHT p40



WHAT SHOULD I DO? p42



INVENTIONS p44

SPEAKING **4.1** Talk about hidden talents **4.2** Talk about what you did at school
4.3 Give advice and make suggestions for language learners
4.4 Talk about inventions

LISTENING **4.1** Listen to someone describing how he used his hidden talent
4.4 Watch an extract from a BBC documentary about developments that have changed the world

READING **4.2** Read an article about different schools

WRITING **4.1** Check your work and correct mistakes **4.4** Write a forum post about inventions

BBC
INTERVIEWS

Are you learning anything at the moment?



https://polcet.edu.vn

4.1 HIDDEN TALENT

G present perfect + *ever/never*
P weak forms: *have*
V *make* and *do*

VOCABULARY

MAKE AND *DO*

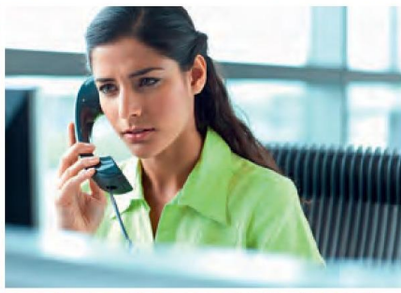
1 A Work in pairs. Which of the phrases in bold below can you see in the pictures?

Make …
a speech in front of more than fifty people
a meal for more than eight people
a phone call in a foreign language
a decision that changed your life for the better
Do …
a project with a big team
business in another language
well/badly in an exam
your homework on the way to school

B Which of the activities in Exercise 1A have you done: a) in the last 24 hours? b) in the last week? c) in the last month? Which have you never done? Compare your answers with other students.













GRAMMAR

PRESENT PERFECT + *EVER/NEVER*

2 A 4.1 Listen and read the conversation below. Which tenses do the speakers use?

A: Have you ever made a speech in public?
B: No, never. Have you?
A: Yes, I have. I made a speech at work.
B: Really? When did you do that?
A: At a conference last year. I was really nervous.
B: I'm not surprised. OK, have you ever made friends with someone from another country?
A: No, I haven't, but my brother has. He met a woman from Chile in 2014. In fact, they got married a week ago!

B Answer the questions about the conversation.

1 Underline two questions about general experiences (where the exact time is not important). How are they formed?
_____ *you* (*ever*) + past participle … ?
2 Find two sentences which say <u>when</u> the actions happened in the past. Which verb tense is used?
3 Circle the three short answers to *Have you … ?* questions.

C WEAK FORMS: *have* Listen again. Notice how *have* is pronounced in the questions. How is it different in the short answers?

▷ page 134 LANGUAGEBANK

3 A Underline the correct alternative.

1 She *has been/was* on TV yesterday.
2 *Have you ever written/Did you ever write* a speech?
3 *I've never eaten/never ate* snails.
4 Last night I *have finished/finished* the book.
5 *Have you ever been/Did you ever go* to the USA?
6 He *has finished/finished* the project this morning.

B Complete the sentences.

1 I've …
2 Yesterday I …
3 I've never …
4 I've always …
5 When I was a child, I …

C Work in pairs and compare your answers.

https://polcet.edu.vn

4 A Write the past participles in the table below. Check your answers on page 127.

catch	*caught*	give	_____
keep	_____	swim	_____
make	_____	sleep	_____
drive	_____	lose	_____
do	_____	win	_____
fly	_____	buy	*bought*
come	_____	pay	_____
cross	_____	grow	_____

B 4.2 Match the verbs which have rhyming past participles. Then listen and check.

caught /kɔːt/ – *bought* /bɔːt/

C Work in pairs. Use the verbs above to make six *Have you ever …?* questions. Use the ideas in the box to help you.

fish anything expensive a bus a prize all day a plane plants in a river

D Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.

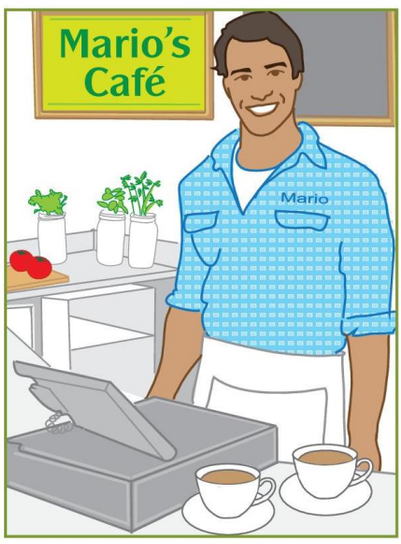
A: *Have you ever caught a fish?*
B: *Yes, I have. I caught three last weekend!*

LISTENING

5 A 4.3 Look at the pictures and listen to an interview with Mario, the boy in the story. As you listen, answer questions 1–3.

1 What was Mario's hidden talent?
2 When did he start to use his talent?
3 How did he use his talent to change his job?





B Listen again and complete the extracts.

1 I've always _____ cooking.
2 Then in my twenties I started to _____ meals for my friends.
3 I had the idea to _____ my food at work.
4 I wanted to _____ something more interesting.
5 _____ you ever thought, 'Oh, I prefer my old office job'?
6 It's the best decision I've ever _____.

SPEAKING

6 A Think about your hidden talent or something you love doing. Write notes about the following questions.

1 What is the talent?
2 Have you ever done it in public?
3 Do you practise? When/Where?
4 Is it/Will it be useful in your job/ future job?

B Work in groups and take turns. Describe your hidden talent.

I am good with numbers. I can do difficult sums in my head without using a calculator.

WRITING

CORRECTING MISTAKES

7 A Read the paragraph below. Find nine mistakes and correct them. Use these symbols:

gr = grammar p = punctuation
sp = spelling

My Hidden Talent

My talent is that I can sing really well. I've always like music I sing all kinds of songs, including rock, pop and classical music I first discovered this abillity when I was young. I often listened to music and sang at the same time. I've doing it many times at parties, in front of my freinds, and in karaoke bars. There is no magic secret I just listen carefuly and am practising on my own.



speakout TIP

Don't make the same mistake twice! Look through your corrected written work. Do you repeat your mistakes? Write down the correct form in a different colour.

B Write a paragraph about your hidden talent or about someone you think is very talented (a sportsperson, actor, singer, writer, etc.).

C Work in groups. Read the paragraphs and correct any mistakes.

https://polcet.edu.vn

4.2 SCHOOLS OF THOUGHT

G *can, have to, must*
P weak forms: *have to*
V education

VOCABULARY

EDUCATION

1 Work in pairs. Discuss the subjects in the box. Which subjects did you like at school? Were there any subjects you didn't like? Why/Why not?

maths	science	history	literature	art
languages	IT (information technology)			

▷ page 154 **PHOTOBANK**

2 A Complete the phrases with the verbs in the box.

make	wear	do/take	give	play	study

1 _____ art/music
a foreign language
online
2 _____ sport
games
a musical instrument
3 _____ mistakes
friends
4 _____ a test
exams
5 _____ a performance
6 _____ a school uniform

B Which of the things above did you do at school? Did you enjoy them? Write (+), (–) or (?) (no experience), next to each one.

C Work in pairs and compare your answers. Who enjoyed their school experience more?

READING

3 A Work in pairs. Discuss. Who was your favourite/least favourite teacher at school? Why? Were your teachers traditional in their approach to teaching? Do you think this was good or bad?

B Read the text. Match paragraphs 1–3 with topics a)–c) below.

a) making mistakes is OK
b) a school where students make the decisions
c) children watch videos outside class

C Read the text again. Discuss. Which of the ideas in the text do you think is the best? Which is the worst? Would these methods work in your country?

ARE TRADITIONAL WAYS OF LEARNING *the best?*

Read about some alternative schools of thought . . .

1 THE ALTERNATIVE SCHOOL

The Alternative School, in Lancashire, UK, offers a different type of schooling for young people who are having problems in mainstream education. The school offers an innovative and interesting educational programme, which is designed specifically for the individual. Students can decide when they come to school, and which subjects they want to study. They don't have to come to school every day. They can choose to start with just a few hours a week. The school uses an 'open door' policy where students are allowed to leave lessons if they are bored or unhappy.

2 THE FLIPPED CLASSROOM

Many classrooms around the world are adopting a flipped classroom approach. This learning model switches classroom learning and homework. In a traditional classroom, the teacher explains the lesson to the students in the classroom, and the students study homework outside class, where they have to work on their own, and can't ask anyone for help. So, in a flipped classroom, children can watch a video of their teacher giving a lecture on the subject at home. They don't have to do any written work. When they come back to the classroom, they have to do the more traditional exercises, but they can ask the teacher or their classmates for help if they don't understand.

3 STARTING YOUNG

A child learning music with the Suzuki method has to start as young as possible. Even two-year-old children can learn to play difficult pieces of classical music, often on the violin. They do this by watching and listening. They learn by copying, just like they learn their mother tongue. The child has to join in, but doesn't have to get it right. 'They soon learn that they mustn't stop every time they make a mistake. They just carry on,' said one Suzuki trainer. The children have to practise for hours every day and they give performances once a week, so they learn quickly. 'The parents must be involved too,' said the trainer, 'or it just doesn't work.'

https://polcet.edu.vn

GRAMMAR

CAN, HAVE TO, MUST

4 Read sentences 1–6 and put the verbs in bold in the correct place in the table.

1 Students **can** decide when they come to school.
2 (The students) **can't** ask anyone for help.
3 They **have to** do the more traditional exercises.
4 At *The Alternative School*, you **don't have to** come to school every day.
5 They **mustn't** stop every time they make a mistake.
6 The parents **must** be involved, too.

possible/allowed	not possible/not allowed
can	
necessary	**not necessary**

▷ page 134 **LANGUAGEBANK**

5 A Complete the text with *have to/don't have to, must/mustn't, can/can't*. There may be more than one possible answer.

Do I have to go to school today?

They [1]_____ (not necessary) wear a uniform, and they [2]_____ (not necessary) wait for the school bus. These are two of the advantages of being home-schooled. But there are more. 'You [3]_____ (possible) choose which subjects you want to study,' says Jasmin, aged fourteen. 'You [4]_____ (necessary) work hard, but you [5]_____ (possible) choose to work when you feel like it.' Jasmin is one of 55,000 children in the UK who doesn't go to school. She stays at home for her education, and she's much happier. 'School is all about rules: you [6]_____ (necessary) be at school at 8.30a.m., you [7]_____ (not allowed) wear trainers, you [8]_____ (not allowed) use your mobile phone in class, etc. I prefer being at home.' Jasmin's mother, Terry, educates her four children at home. 'Some people think that children who study at home [9]_____ (not allowed) go to the exams and get the same qualifications, but they [10]_____ (allowed), and they do!'

B 4.4 **WEAK FORMS: *have to*** Listen and check.

C Listen and notice the pronunciation of *have to* /hæftə/.

D Listen again and repeat.

6 Work in pairs. Discuss two or three similarities and differences between home-schooling and going to a normal school. Do you think home-schooling is a good idea? Why/Why not?

SPEAKING

7 Work in pairs. Read the statements. Are the rules the same or different in your country? Do you think this is a good or a bad idea? Discuss.



1 In the UK, children have to learn a foreign language at school.
2 In the UK, you can take exams in art, cooking and sport at school.
3 Children in Thailand have to sing the national anthem in the morning.
4 In Singapore, children must learn most subjects (maths and science) in English.
5 In France, children don't have to wear uniforms to school.
6 In Japan, children mustn't be late for school, or they can't get in.
7 In Spain, children don't have to eat at school. They can go home for lunch.
8 In the UK, children can eat a vegetarian meal at lunch.
9 Children in Poland must repeat the year if they fail their exams.



https://polcet.edu.vn

4.3 WHAT SHOULD I DO?

F giving advice
P silent letters
V language learning



SPEAKING

1 A Read the quotes about learning. Do you agree with any of them? Why/Why not?

> We learn by doing.
>
> ***A little knowledge is a dangerous thing.***
>
> ***Anyone who stops learning is old, whether at twenty or eighty.***
>
> **The best way to learn is to teach.**

B Compare your ideas with other students.

VOCABULARY

LANGUAGE LEARNING

2 A Read sentences 1–7. Then match the words in bold with definitions a)–g).

1 I **re-read** articles we use in class.
2 I **look up** new words in a dictionary.
3 I watch films with **subtitles.**
4 I **go online** to read the news in English.
5 I **chat** to other learners.
6 I **note down** new phrases in my notebook.
7 I listen to English songs and I try to **memorise** them.

a) find information in a book/on a computer
b) read again
c) talk (possibly on the internet)
d) study until you remember
e) words on a film which translate what a character says
f) write
g) use the internet

B Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

1 Which of the activities above do you do? How often?
2 Which do you think are the most important/useful for learning English?
3 Do you have any other ideas on how to improve your English?

FUNCTION

GIVING ADVICE

3 A Read the website message below and think of three things Zeynep can do to improve her English.

Hello, everyone. In two months I'll start work at an international company. The only problem is I need to improve my English quickly. I did well in my recent English exam, but I need to do business in English, and I know it'll be more difficult. Do you have any good ideas?
Zeynep

B Work in pairs and compare your answers.

4 Read the replies and discuss. Which ideas have you tried? Which do you think are the most useful ideas?

Hi Zeynep. I think you should use message boards to make new friends. Then you can chat with them online in English and it doesn't matter if you make mistakes.
Ahmed L

Zeynep, go online and find a business website you like. When you don't understand some words, you should look them up and write them in a notebook.
Ruby 335

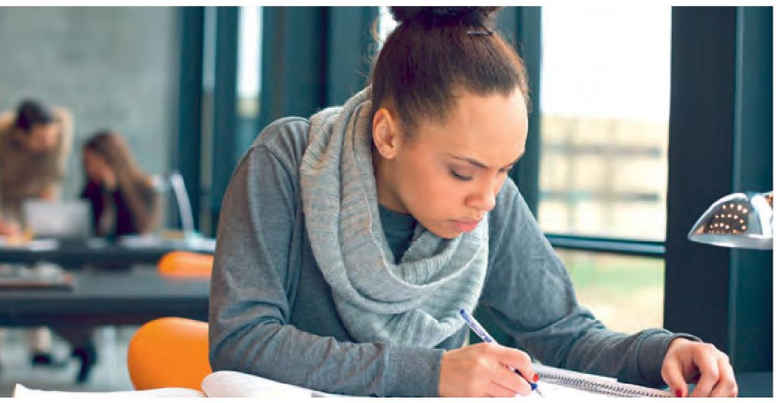
You shouldn't worry. They gave you the job, so you're good enough. Relax and just watch some movies in English.
Marie 98

Why don't you use graded readers? They're enjoyable and they'll help you learn new words.
Ana Kosicka

Zeynep, I think it's a good idea to use language learning apps, as these help you measure your progress.
Jung-sun Huang

https://polcet.edu.vn





5 A Look at the replies in Exercise 4 again. Complete phrases 1–6 below.

1 I _____ you should …
2 Find/Write _____
3 You should _____
4 You shouldn't _____
5 Why _____ you_____ …?
6 I (don't) think it's a good _____ to …

B Discuss. Which phrases have the same meaning?

C 4.5 **SILENT LETTERS** How is *should* pronounced? Which letter is silent? Listen and repeat.

6 A 4.6 Listen to two teachers discussing language learning. What problems do they mention?

B Work in pairs. Complete the notes in the table.

problem	advice
Students too shy to speak. Worry about [1]_____ _____.	Give students time to [2]_____. Let them practise in [3]_____.
Students have problems [4]_____.	Watch film clips on YouTube. Watch the mouth, [5]_____, body language. Use [6]_____ the second time.

C Listen again to check.

D Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

1 Do you have the problems mentioned in the recording?
2 What do you think of the advice?
3 Can you add any other advice?

LEARN TO

RESPOND TO ADVICE

7 A Read the extracts below. How did the listener respond? Listen again and write the response.

1 They can take notes first.
2 Let them practise in groups before they speak in front of everyone. This'll give them confidence.
3 And using subtitles? Some teachers say we shouldn't use them. Ever!
4 They can see which words are swallowed.

B Read the responses. Mark them (✓) I agree, (✗) I disagree or (?) I agree but not completely.

1 That's a good idea.
2 I suppose so.
3 You're right.
4 I'm not sure that's a good idea.

▷ page 134 **LANGUAGEBANK**

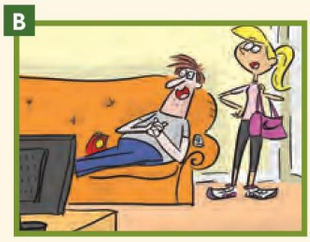
8 A Look at pictures A–D below. What do you think the problems are?

A



1
A: I think _____ in the food industry. (you / work)
B: That's _____ idea. (good)

B



2
A: You _____ so much time watching TV. (not / spend)
B: _____ right.

C



3
A: _____ we find you a personal trainer? (why)
B: I _____ a good idea. (not sure)

D



4
A: I think _____ idea to start going shopping together. (good)
B: I _____. (suppose)

B Complete the conversations in pictures A–D using the words in brackets.

9 Work with two other students. Take turns to ask for and respond to advice. Student A: turn to page 160. Student B: turn to page 162. Student C: turn to page 164. Read your situation and explain it to the others.

I've got this problem …

https://polcet.edu.vn

4.4 BBC INVENTIONS

DVD PREVIEW

1 Work in groups. Discuss the questions.

1 Do you ever travel by aeroplane? How frequently?
2 Have you ever flown long distances? If so, did you enjoy the experience?
3 What do you know about the invention of the aeroplane? (Who? Where? When?)

2 Read the programme information. Why does Dallas Campbell go to the USA?

Supersized Earth: The Way We Move

Supersized Earth looks at amazing developments that have changed the modern world. This programme shows the start of aeroplane travel. Dallas Campbell goes to the USA, where the Wright brothers first flew a glider, an early type of aeroplane without an engine, in 1902. Campbell tries out a replica (a perfect copy) of the glider to see if he can fly it.



3 A Read the sentences. What do you think the words and phrases in bold mean?

1 The brothers' first journey **triggered a whole century of innovation**.
2 The **invention** the Wright brothers are known for is the aeroplane.
3 They began to **conquer** the skies.
4 The brothers **achieved** this in a simple way.
5 The first plane **launched a revolution** in the way we travel.

B Match the words/phrases in bold in Exercise 3A with meanings a)–e) below.

a) were successful at something
b) caused one hundred years of new ideas
c) started something that changed society
d) a new creation
e) become the master of (something)

DVD VIEW

4 A Watch the DVD and answer the questions.

1 What does Dallas Campbell tell us about the Wright brothers' first flight?
2 Does Dallas Campbell fly the glider successfully?

B Which words complete the notes? Choose the correct alternative. Watch the DVD again to check.

1 On 17 December *1903/1913* the Wright brothers made a journey.
2 They travelled *120 miles/120 feet*.
3 A year before flying a plane, the brothers built *a glider/a plane engine*.
4 Dallas Campbell says the plane 'helped transform our *travel/planet*.'

5 Work in pairs. Discuss. What new information did you learn from the programme?

https://polcet.edu.vn

speakout inventions

6 A Look at the list of inventors and their inventions. What do you know about these people? What other famous inventors do you know?

Johannes Gutenberg (1395–1468): the printing press
Alexander Graham Bell (1847–1922): the telephone
Thomas Edison (1847–1931): the light bulb
Tim Berners-Lee (b. 1955): the internet

B 4.7 Listen to two people talking about important inventions. Which do they mention?

1 Which idea do they think is very good?
2 Which idea do they disagree about?
3 What is the third idea they talk about?

C Listen again and tick the key phrases you hear.

KEYPHRASES

I think the most important …
For me, …
That's true, but …
In my opinion, …
Another invention that I see as really important is …
Definitely.
That's right.
I agree.

7 A Work in pairs. Which three inventions do you think are the most important? Use the ideas in Exercise 6A or choose your own ideas.

B Tell the rest of the class about your choices. Do you all agree?

writeback a forum post

8 A Read about an online survey and then read a post by a commenter. What is the survey about and what does the person think of it?

World Changers

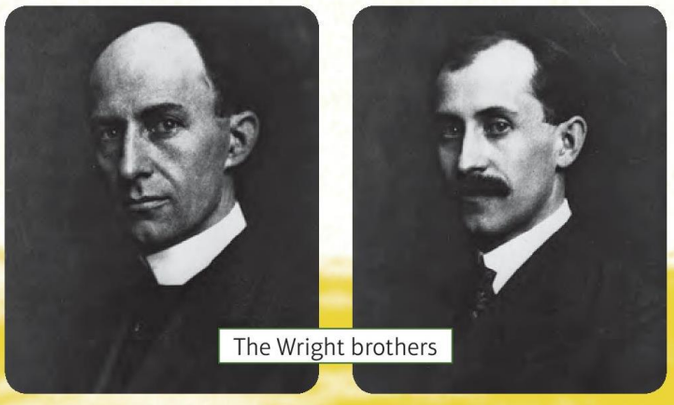
We asked 15,000 people from 15 countries to name the most important inventions in history. Here are the top ten:

1 wheel
2 telephone
3 antibiotics
4 language
5 aeroplane
6 electricity
7 refrigerator
8 internet
9 engine
10 iPhone

I think the list includes some very important inventions, but in my opinion there are also some strange choices. Some of them, e.g. language and electricity, aren't inventions at all. These are discoveries of natural things and shouldn't be on this list. I'm also surprised that the toilet and the printing press aren't in the top ten. For me, these are essential. Without the toilet, there would be a lot more disease, and without the printing press, modern communications would be very different: we would have fewer books, magazines and newspapers. Also, I'm amazed that the iPhone is at number ten! How many people in the world actually have an iPhone? It seems strange to include it in a list of basic needs like the wheel and antibiotics.

Nick G

B Write a post saying what you think of the top ten inventions. Explain your reasons. You can also add other suggestions for inventions you think should be included.



The Wright brothers

https://polcet.edu.vn

4.5 LOOKBACK

V MAKE AND DO

1 A Complete the questions with *makes* or *does*.

Who in your family …



1 *makes* decisions about where you go on holiday?



2 _____ most of the meals?



3 _____ a lot of homework?



4 _____ the most phone calls?



5 _____ projects at work?



6 _____ speeches?

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.

G PAST SIMPLE OR PRESENT PERFECT + *EVER/NEVER*

2 A Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

Questions

1 _____ in the sea? (you / ever swim)

2 _____ on holiday last year? (you / go)

Negatives

3 _____ Africa. (I / never visit)

4 _____ last night. (I / not go out)

Affirmatives

5 _____ in more than one country. (I / live)

6 _____ in a restaurant last weekend. (I / eat)

B Work in pairs and take turns. Guess your partner's answers to questions 1–2.

C Are sentences 3–6 true for your partner? Ask and answer questions to find out.

V EDUCATION

3 A Match 1–7 with a)–g) to make questions.

1 Do you play
2 When you take
3 How do you feel when you make
4 At school, did you
5 Have you ever given a
6 Do you ever study
7 Did you study

a) online?
b) performance of anything?
c) exams, do you get nervous?
d) study art?
e) any sport particularly well?
f) a foreign language at school?
g) mistakes?

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.

G CAN, HAVE TO, MUST

4 A Underline the correct alternative to complete the sentences.

1 In Australia, you *must/can/don't have to* drive on the left.
2 In the UK, you *have to/can/can't* smoke in pubs and restaurants.
3 You *can't/have to/must* talk on your mobile phone during an examination.
4 Children are lucky. They *don't have to/must/can* worry about paying bills!
5 In the UK, you *have to/can't/mustn't* be 17 years old before you can ride a motorcycle.

B Write down one thing:

- you can/can't do in your country
- you have to do next week
- you mustn't do during an exam
- you don't have to do at the weekend
- you must do when learning a language
- you mustn't do while driving
- you have to do every day
- you don't have to do when you are a child

C Work in pairs and compare your ideas.

V LANGUAGE LEARNING

5 A Complete the questions.

1 Do you r_____ - r_____ articles to help you understand them?
2 When's the last time you went o_____ to study English?
3 Do you like watching films with sub_____? Why/Why not?
4 Have you ever used a ch_____ room in English?
5 Which words from this unit are you going to mem_____?

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.

F GIVING ADVICE

6 A Complete the tables below with phrases for giving/ responding to advice.

giving advice

responding to advice

B Work in pairs. Complete the conversation in different ways.

A: Why don't we _____?
B: That's a _____.
A: I think/don't think _____.
B: OK. Let's _____.

C Practise and act out your conversation.

https://polcet.edu.vn

5 travel



FANTASTIC FILM TRIPS p48



TRAVEL TIPS p50



YOU CAN'T MIT IT p52



FULL CIRCLE p54

SPEAKING **5.1** Tell a travel anecdote **5.2** Discuss travel **5.3** Ask for and give directions **5.4** Present ideas for an award

LISTENING **5.2** Understand travel advice **5.3** Understand and follow directions in a city **5.4** Watch an extract from a BBC travel programme

READING **5.1** Read about amazing journeys in films **5.3** Read a text about a man who works in three countries every day

WRITING **5.2** Write an email describing a trip or weekend away **5.4** Write an application for an award

BBC

INTERVIEWS

Do you enjoy travelling to different countries?



https://polcet.edu.vn

5.1 FANTASTIC FILM TRIPS

G past simple and past continuous
P weak forms: *was/were*
V transport





VOCABULARY

TRANSPORT

1 Work in pairs and answer the questions.

1 How many types of transport can you think of in two minutes? Make a list.
2 What do you think is the best way to travel? Why?

▷ page 155 PHOTOBANK

READING

2 Work in pairs. Look at photos A–C and discuss the questions.

1 What types of transport do you think appear in the films above?
2 Where do you think the people are going?

3 Work in groups. Student A: read the text on this page. Student B: read the text on page 161. Student C: read the text on page 163. As you read, make notes about your text.

1 Who made the journey?
2 Why did they want to go?
3 Where did they go?

4 Take turns to tell your group about your text. Which story do you think sounds the most interesting?

KON-TIKI

In the middle of the twentieth century the Norwegian explorer and writer Thor Heyerdahl developed a theory. He believed that people from South America travelled to Polynesia 1,500 years ago and settled there. At the time, very few others believed his theory. They thought the journey was too difficult without modern technology. While others were discussing the theory, Heyerdahl decided to test it.

Using only materials and technology available to the people of that time, Heyerdahl and his team of five sailors (and a parrot) built a wooden raft*. On 28 April 1947 they left from Peru and crossed the Pacific.

While they were sailing, huge waves crashed into the raft, and whales and sharks came close. 101 days and 4,300 miles later they arrived in Polynesia. At the time, no one knew this type of journey was possible. But perhaps the most amazing thing about the journey was that Thor Heyerdahl didn't know how to swim!

Heyerdahl later wrote a book about the journey, and in 2012 a Norwegian film called *Kon-Tiki* came out, based on the trip.

*__raft__: a flat boat usually made of wood

speakout TIP

Make short notes. Don't write full sentences. Choose only important information. Try to use your own words. *The sun was shining when they began their journey that Friday morning.* ➞ *Sunny when they left.* Find a sentence in one of the texts. Make a note of the main idea in three or four words.

5 Discuss the questions.

1 Which (parts of the) journeys sound enjoyable/terrible/frightening?
2 Why do you think the stories were made into films?
3 Can you think of any other journeys that have been made into films?

https://polcet.edu.vn


C

Rabbit-Proof Fence

GRAMMAR

PAST SIMPLE AND PAST CONTINUOUS

6 A Look at sentences a)–c) and answer the questions.

a) While they **were sailing**, huge waves **crashed** into the raft.
b) While he **was living** wild, he **wrote** a diary.
c) When it **was raining**, the girls **decided** to escape.

1 What tenses are the verbs in bold?
2 Which action started first in each sentence (*sail* or *crash*, etc.)?
3 Which action took a longer period of time?
4 Which actions are background information and which are main events?

B Underline the correct alternative to complete the rules.

RULES

1 Use the *past simple/past continuous* for background actions that continue for a long time.
2 Use the *past simple/past continuous* for shorter actions that move the story forward.

C Find one more example of the past simple and the past continuous in the same sentence in your text.

▷ page 136 **LANGUAGEBANK**

7 A Make sentences with the prompts.

1 I / run / start to snow. So …
I was running when it started to snow. So I went home!
2 I / wait for a bus / meet my boss. So …
3 I / watch TV / recognise my best friend! So …
4 I / walk home / find $5,000 in a bag. So …
5 We / travel by plane / a man with a gun stand up. So …
6 We / ride our bicycles / a cow walk across the road. So …
7 We / eat in a restaurant / see a mouse. So …
8 I / study in my room / hear loud music next door. So …

B Work in pairs and compare your ideas.

8 A 5.1 Listen to some ideas for Exercise 7A. Are they similar to yours?

B WEAK FORMS: *was/were* Listen again. Notice how *was* /wəz/ and *were* /wə/ are pronounced. Then listen and repeat the first part of the sentences.

9 Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: make sentences with the past simple and the past continuous. Use a prompt from A and a prompt from B. Student B: respond with another sentence beginning with *So* … .

A: *I was sleeping in my bed when I heard a strange noise.*
B: *So I called the police.*

A

- sleep
- ride my motorbike
- deal with a problem
- go for a drink
- feel sick
- go to a concert
- make a call
- sit in a train
- have some time off
- watch a film

B

- get hungry
- buy a speedboat
- crash
- decide to change job
- start to feel tired
- fall asleep
- see the love of my life
- check my voicemail
- read your email
- hear a strange noise

SPEAKING

10 A Describe something that happened to you on a trip or journey. Think about questions 1–8 and make notes.

1 Where and when did you go?
2 Who were you with?
3 What was the form of transport?
4 How long did the trip take?
5 What places did you see during the journey?
6 Did anything go wrong during the journey?
7 What happened while you were travelling?
8 How did you feel?

Last summer I went on holiday to Turkey. I stayed in Istanbul for two days and then went to the coast. One day, while I was travelling by boat, I dropped my bag into the water. I lost my camera and my passport. It was a disaster!

B Work in groups. Tell your stories. Which were the most interesting and/or funniest stories you heard?

https://polcet.edu.vn

5.2 TRAVEL TIPS

G verb patterns
P stressed syllables
V travel items

VOCABULARY

TRAVEL ITEMS

1 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

1 Do you travel light?
2 What do you usually pack when you go away for a short trip/long holiday?

2 A Work in pairs. Look at the words in the box and choose two things for travellers 1–3 below.

suitcase notebook digital camera souvenirs waterproof clothes dictionary walking boots sun hat backpack money belt binoculars map umbrella

1 a grandmother visiting her grandchildren in Australia
2 a student travelling around the world
3 a tourist visiting the sights in New York

B 5.2 **STRESSED SYLLABLES** Listen and repeat the words. Underline the stressed syllables.

C Work in pairs. Discuss. Which of the things in Exercise 2A do you take on holiday with you?

▷ page 155 **PHOTOBANK**

LISTENING

3 A 5.3 Listen to people describing what they take on holiday. Which of the items in Exercise 2A do the travellers mention?

B Work in pairs and complete the notes.

1 I try to learn _____.
2 I love _____.
3 I take a lot of _____.
4 I usually spend my holidays in _____.
5 I sometimes travel in _____ places.
6 I don't carry too much _____.
7 I write things down because I like to _____ them.

C Listen again to check.



GRAMMAR

VERB PATTERNS

4 A Look at sentences 1–9 below and underline the verb + verb combinations.

1 We always expect to hear English.
2 I always want to talk to local people.
3 I love walking when I go on holiday.
4 I always seem to take hundreds and hundreds of photos.
5 I usually choose to go to a warm place.
6 I enjoy travelling in wild places.
7 If you decide to go walking, a backpack is easier to carry.
8 It's best to avoid carrying too much money.
9 I need to write things down.

B Complete the table below with the verbs in the box.

~~expect~~ want seem choose enjoy decide avoid need

verb + *-ing*	verb + infinitive with *to*
	expect

C Work in pairs. Add the verbs in the box below to the table above. Which two verbs can go in both columns?

hope finish imagine hate would like love

▷ page 136 **LANGUAGEBANK**

5 Cross out the verb combination that is not possible in each sentence.

1 I *hope/~~enjoy~~/expect* to get a free plane ticket.
2 I *want/would like/imagine* to visit Australia.
3 She *loves/avoids/needs* travelling.
4 Where did you *like/decide/choose* to go on your next holiday?
5 They *hate/want/love* working with tourists.
6 He doesn't *seem/need/enjoy* to know this area well.
7 Do you *like/expect/love* going to different countries?
8 Why did you *avoid/decide/hope* to become a travel writer?

https://polcet.edu.vn

6 A Complete the sentences and make them true for you. The next word must be either the infinitive with *to* or the *-ing* form of a verb.

1 When I travel:
I always avoid …
I hate …
I love …

2 On my last holiday:
I chose …
I decided …
I enjoyed …

3 For my next holiday:
I want …
I hope …
I would like …

B Work in pairs and compare your ideas.

SPEAKING

7 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

1 What type of holidays can you see in the photos? Which do you prefer? Why?
2 Is there anything that you really love doing when you are on holiday?
3 When you travel, do you try to learn about the place, its customs and its language? Why/Why not?
4 Do you enjoy visiting tourist areas, old cities, new cities, or none of these?

A: I really like sightseeing holidays. I love spending time looking at beautiful old buildings.
B: I love taking photos. I put them on my Facebook page when I get back.
A: Me, too.

WRITING

USING SEQUENCERS

8 A Work in pairs. Read an email describing a trip and discuss. What were the good/bad things about the trip?

To paolo.moncello@flu.edi
From igonzalez@ab.esp
inbox 12

Hi Paolo,

I hope you're well. I've just got back from my trip to Poland. It was wonderful. First we flew to Warsaw. We were only there for two days, but we managed to see lots of interesting sights like the Royal Castle and the National Museum. Then we had a day in Kraków, which was beautiful, especially the huge square in the Old Town. Unfortunately, after a while, it started raining so we spent the afternoon chatting with locals in a bar. After that, we took a train to Łódź. I loved it. We visited various museums and walked along the famous Piotrkowska Street. Finally, we caught the plane back home. It was a great trip and we met lots of really friendly Poles, who promised to visit us in Spain!

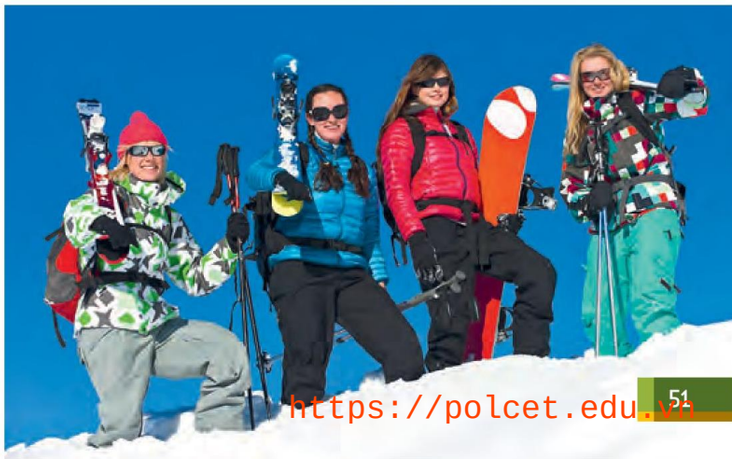
Love,

Irina

B Underline five words/phrases that help us to understand the order of events. The first one has been done for you.

C Write an email to a friend about a trip or a weekend away. Use the words you underlined.

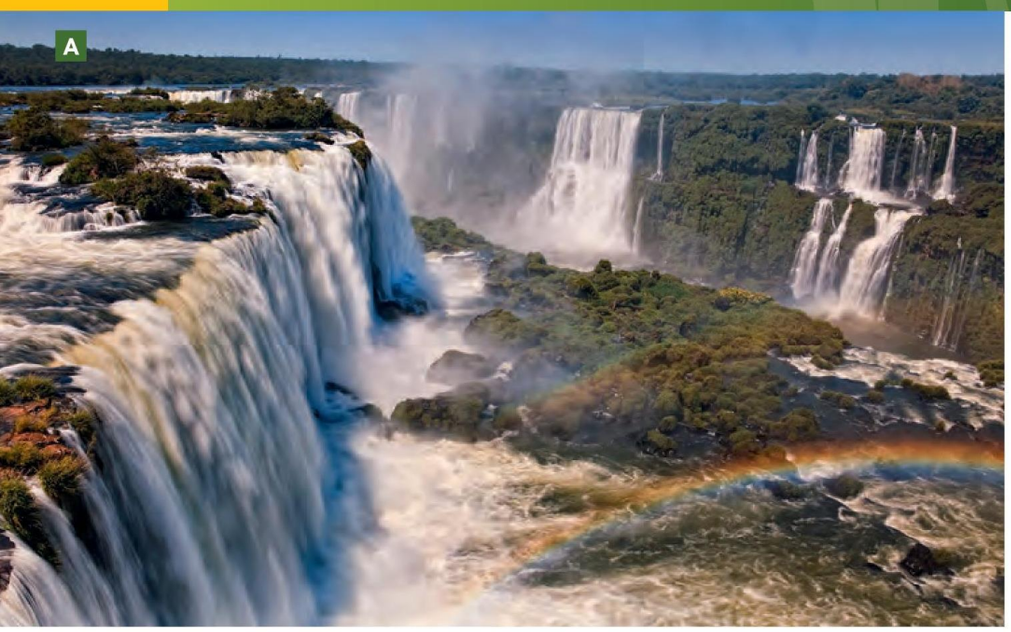


https://polcet.edu.vn

5.3 YOU CAN'T MISS IT

F asking for/giving directions
P intonation: questions
V tourism







VOCABULARY

TOURISM

1 Work in pairs. Look at the words in the box. Which things can you see in the photos?

tour guide	boat trip	coach tour	tourists
sightseeing	natural wonder	tax-free shopping	

2 A Look at the title of the text below. Discuss. What do you think the man does? Why do you think he works in three countries every day?

B Read the text to find out.

C Discuss. Would you like Juan's job? Why/Why not?



JUAN OLIVEIRA was born in Argentina, grew up in Paraguay and now lives in Brazil. He says he loves the three countries equally, and he works in all three of them every day.

Juan is a tour guide in Foz do Iguaçu, a Brazilian town which is close to the borders of both Argentina and Paraguay. He takes tourists around the Iguaçu Falls, one of the great natural wonders of the world.

First, he shows tourists the waterfall from the Brazilian side. Then they cross the border to see the water from the Argentinian side. After that, they go on a boat trip which takes them under the waterfall. Finally, he takes them on the short journey to Ciudad del Este in Paraguay to do some tax-free shopping.

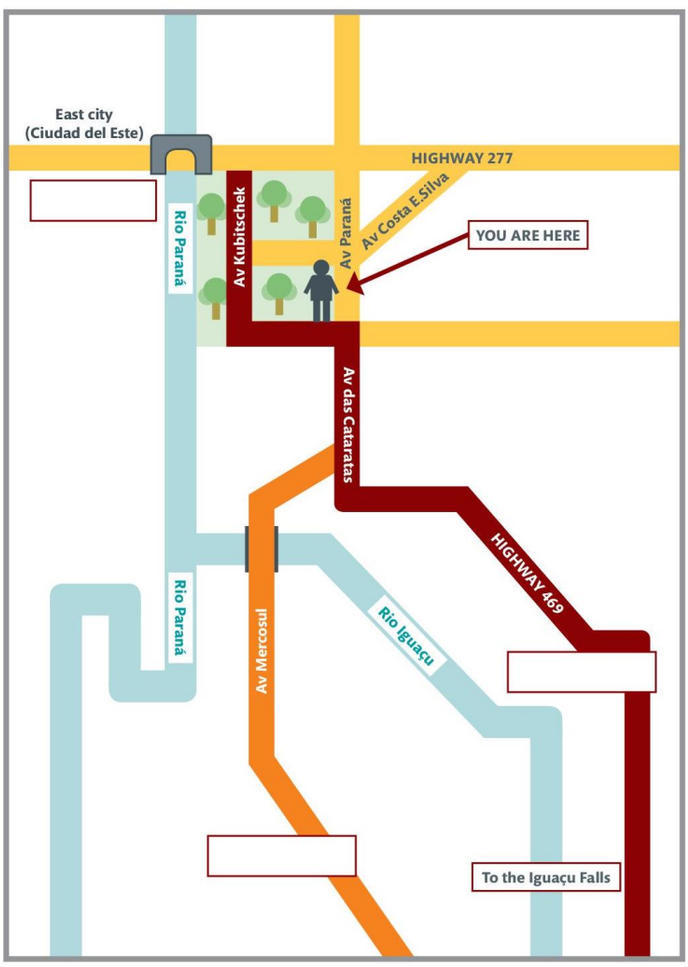
He says the Falls are amazing, especially in the rainy season. He sees them every day and he never gets tired of them.

FUNCTION

ASKING FOR/GIVING DIRECTIONS

3 A 5.4 Look at the map. Where is the tourist? Now listen and follow the routes on the map. For each route, write the destination (the country) on the map.

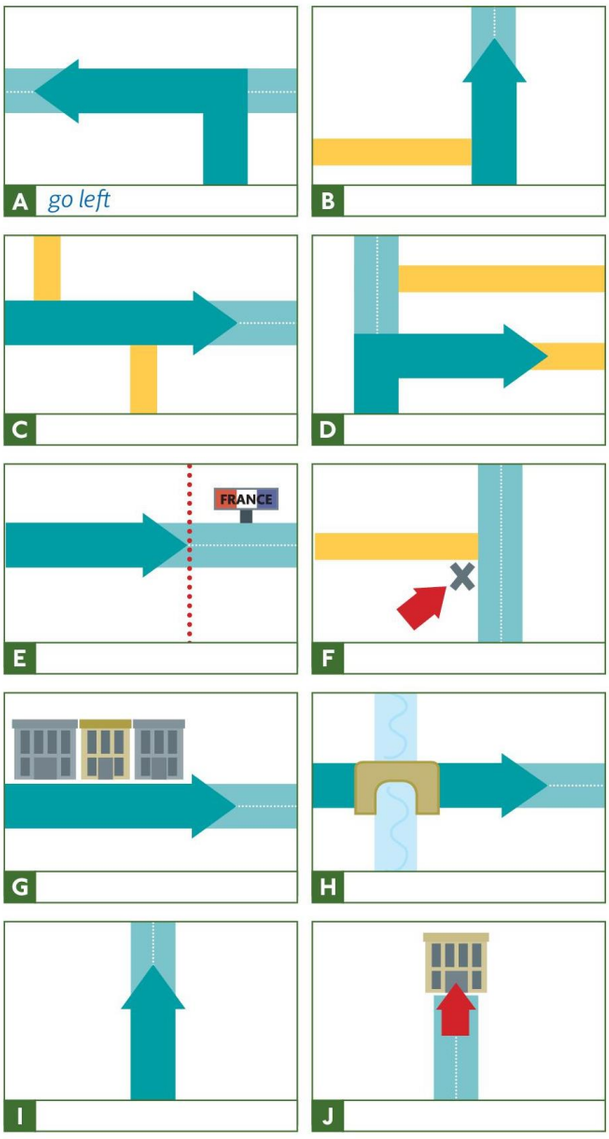
B Listen again and read audio script 5.4 on page 171. Underline useful phrases for giving directions.



https://polcet.edu.vn

4 Label pictures A–J with the phrases in the box.

go along the main road go straight on
in front of you go past the turning ~~go left~~
take the first right at the corner cross a bridge
keep going until you reach (the border)
go through the (centre of the town)



5 **A** 5.5 Listen to three conversations. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

1 Speaker 1 takes the bus.
2 Speaker 2 has a map.
3 Speaker 3 will see a restaurant before arriving at The Grand Motel.

B Complete the notes. Listen again to check.

Conversation 1 Carnival
It takes _____ minutes. Go straight on. You'll hear the _____!

Conversation 2 Plaza Hotel
Go past the cinema. Take the first _____. Keep going for _____ minutes. You'll see the _____.

Conversation 3 The Grand Motel
Go to the end of this street. Go _____ and go past the _____. It's on the _____.

▷ page 136 LANGUAGEBANK

LEARN TO

SHOW/CHECK UNDERSTANDING

6 **A** 5.6 Read and listen to the extracts from the audio script. Are the phrases in bold asking for information (A), explaining directions (E) or showing understanding (U)?

Extract 1
A: Can we walk? *A*
B: Yes, **it takes about ten minutes** from here. *E*

Extract 2
C: Excuse me, can you help me? I'm looking for the Plaza Hotel. **Is this the right way?**
D: Um … Plaza Hotel, Plaza Hotel. Yes, **keep going**, past the cinema and take the first left.
C: OK.
D: Then keep going for about fifteen minutes until you reach the end of the road. And **you'll see** the sign for the hotel. **You can't miss it.**
C: OK. **Can you show me on the map?**
D: Sure.

Extract 3
E: Excuse me, we want to get to The Grand Motel. **Is it far?**
F: Umm … sorry, I've no idea. Jim, do you know?
G: What?
F: The Grand Motel?
G: The Grand Motel? Yeah, it's just over there. Just go to the end of this street. Go left and go past the … um … there's a restaurant. Go past the restaurant and it's on the left.
E: On the left. **So I need to** go to the end of the street, turn left, go past the restaurant and it's on the left.

B Which phrases mean:
1 Am I going in the right direction?
2 Continue.
3 It's easy to see it.

C 5.7 **INTONATION: questions** Listen to five questions. Which words are said louder and with a higher voice: words at the beginning (*is, can*) or near the end of the question? Listen again to check.

7 Work in pairs. Look at audio script 5.5 on page 171 and practise the first two conversations.

SPEAKING

8 Work in pairs. Student A: look at the map on page 161. Student B: look at the map on page 163. Ask for and give directions.

A: *How do I get to the station?*
B: *Go straight on until you reach the Greek restaurant, then turn right.*

https://polcet.edu.vn

5.4 BBC FULL CIRCLE

DVD PREVIEW

1 A Have you ever been on a long and/or difficult journey? What can you remember about it? Tell other students.

B Read the programme information and answer the questions.

1 What does Michael Palin do?
2 Where does he travel to in *Full Circle*?
3 How does he travel in this episode?



Full Circle

Michael Palin is an actor and travel writer. In *Full Circle*, he went on a journey through the seventeen countries along the Pacific coast. While travelling 50,000 miles in ten months, he saw and discovered things beyond his dreams. He learnt how to cook eggs in a volcano and how to make music with horses' bones in Chile! In this episode, Michael travels across the Andes from Arica in Chile to La Paz in Bolivia in a small train.

DVD VIEW

2 Watch the DVD. Was it an enjoyable journey? Which of the problems below do the people mention?

- the food is terrible
- the train gets very hot
- the air is thin and it's difficult to breathe
- the train is very noisy
- the train stops a lot because of animals/cars on the track
- the train is very slow

3 A Work in pairs. What do you think the words/phrases in bold mean?

a) **Twice a week**, a railway service leaves Arica. *1*
b) We've **reached** the Bolivian border. __
c) It's going to **take two hours**. __
d) Some passengers are **local**. __
e) Is it the **journey of a lifetime**? __
f) It's the **journey of (everyone's) dreams**. __
g) We've **crossed** the Andes at 16.4 miles an hour. __

B Watch the DVD again. Number the sentences in Exercise 3A in the order you hear them.

4 Work in groups. Discuss the questions.

1 What do you think of this journey?
2 Would you like to do it? Why/Why not?



https://polcet.edu.vn

speakout an award

5 A Read the text and answer the questions.

1 What is the award?
2 What will the winner do?

Journey of my Dreams is an award of €5,000 for the best idea for an original and inspiring journey anywhere in the world. The winner will receive training in film-making and will record their experiences for a future programme.

B 5.8 Listen to someone describing her journey.

1 Where does she want to go?
2 What does she want to do there?

C Listen again and tick the key phrases you hear.

KEYPHRASES

We would like to go to …
The trip is going to take …
Some of the problems we're going to face include …
We want to experience the local culture …
Our plan is to speak to the local people …
We hope to find out about their traditions …
It should be an inspiring trip.
This is the journey of my/our dreams.

6 A You are going to apply for the award. Work in pairs. Decide:

- where/how you are going to travel
- what you would like to experience/see/do
- which people you are going to stay/work with
- why you deserve the award

B Present your ideas to the class. Use the key phrases to help you. Who should win the award?

writeback an application

7 A Read the application. Match paragraphs 1–3 with headings a)–c).

a) Goals and objectives
b) Details of the plan
c) Introduction

APPLICATION FORM

1 _____
We would like to go to Easter Island to live with the local people for three months. Easter Island is one of the great mysteries of the world. It has many famous stone statues of heads, but no one knows who made them or why.

2 _____
Our plan is to talk to the islanders about their history and about their present and future. We will ask them about their lives and what they think of the statues. We want to learn how the world's most isolated people live: what they eat, what they do for entertainment and what they think of the modern world of computers and other technology.

3 _____
We will record all of the interviews on film. We will also keep a diary of our own experiences on the island. Eventually, we hope to make a TV documentary and write a book about our time on the island.

B Write your application for the award. Use the model in Exercise 7A to help you.



https://polcet.edu.vn

5.5 LOOKBACK

V TRANSPORT

1 A Choose four types of transport from the box below. Write a sentence about each type. Don't mention the name.

train	tram	minibus	taxi
motorbike	ferry	speedboat	
coach	lorry	helicopter	

It travels through water and is very fast.

B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: read your sentences. Student B: guess which type of transport it is.

A: *It's a fast type of transport. It goes on the road. It has two wheels.*
B: *A motorbike.*

G PAST SIMPLE AND PAST CONTINUOUS

2 A Put the verbs in brackets into the past simple or past continuous.

1 While they (walk), they (see) a fence.
While they were walking, they saw a fence.
2 While they (cross) the sea, a terrible storm nearly (destroy) the raft.
3 They (run) away one night while it (rain).
4 While he (wander) in the wilderness, he (meet) some people who helped him.
5 When the men (sail) on the ocean, they (see) many sea creatures.
6 While he (live) in an abandoned bus, he (realise) he might die.

B Work in pairs. Discuss. Which films from Lesson 5.1 do the sentences go with?

3 Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the question.

Where were you and what were you doing at these times yesterday?



V TRAVEL ITEMS

4 A Add the vowels.

1 stcs *suitcase*
2 bckpck
3 wtrprf clths
4 wlkng bts
5 sn ht
6 svnrs
7 bnclrs
8 ntbk
9 dgtl cmr
10 mny blt

B Work in pairs. Decide which of the items above are important for the holidays below.



A sun hat is important for a beach holiday.

G VERB PATTERNS

5 A Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1 I sometimes choose _____ (go) somewhere on holiday because a friend recommends it.
2 I hope _____ (visit) more cities in my own country this year.
3 I seem _____ (have) good luck with the weather when I go on holiday. It never rains!
4 I want _____ (travel) to places where tourists never go.
5 I always avoid _____ (travel) by boat because I get sick.
6 I don't enjoy _____ (fly) very much.
7 I can't imagine _____ (go) on a camping holiday – I prefer hotels!
8 I wouldn't like _____ (have) a holiday with a big group of people.

B Work in pairs. Discuss. Are sentences 1–8 true for you? Why/Why not?

F ASKING FOR/GIVING DIRECTIONS

6 A Find and correct the mistakes. There are two mistakes in each conversation.

Conversation 1
A: Excuse me. I'm looking for the Natural History Museum. Is this right way?
B: Keep going until you reach the crossroads. It's in the right.

Conversation 2
A: Hello. We want to go to the Italian Embassy. Is far?
B: No. Just turn left and you'll see the sign for it. You can't miss.

Conversation 3
A: Excuse me, do you know where the university is?
B: Keep going long the main road. Then you'll see a sign and it's in front to you.

B Work in pairs and practise the conversations.

C Work in pairs and take turns.

Student A: ask for directions:
- from a well-known place in the town to Student B's house
- from Student B's house to the school

Student B: ask for directions:
- from the school to a nearby restaurant
- from a nearby restaurant to a well-known place in the town

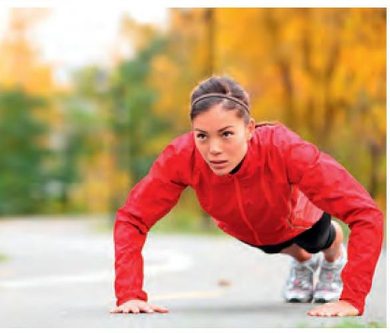
A: *OK. How do I get from the station to your house?*
B: *Well, you take the first right …*



https://polcet.edu.vn

6 fitness





KEEPING FIT p58



THE FUTURE OF FOOD p60



HOW ARE YOU FEELING? p62



MONITOR ME p64

SPEAKING **6.1** Talk about your lifestyle **6.2** Discuss food preferences **6.3** Explain health problems **6.4** Talk about healthy habits

LISTENING **6.2** Listen to a radio interview with a food expert **6.3** Listen to conversations between a doctor and her patients **6.4** Watch an extract from a BBC documentary about health

READING **6.1** Identify specific information in an article about types of exercise

WRITING **6.2** Write about food **6.4** Write a blog post about health advice

BBC

INTERVIEWS

What do you do to keep fit?



https://polcet.edu.vn

6.1 KEEPING FIT

G present perfect + *for/since*
P sentence stress
V health

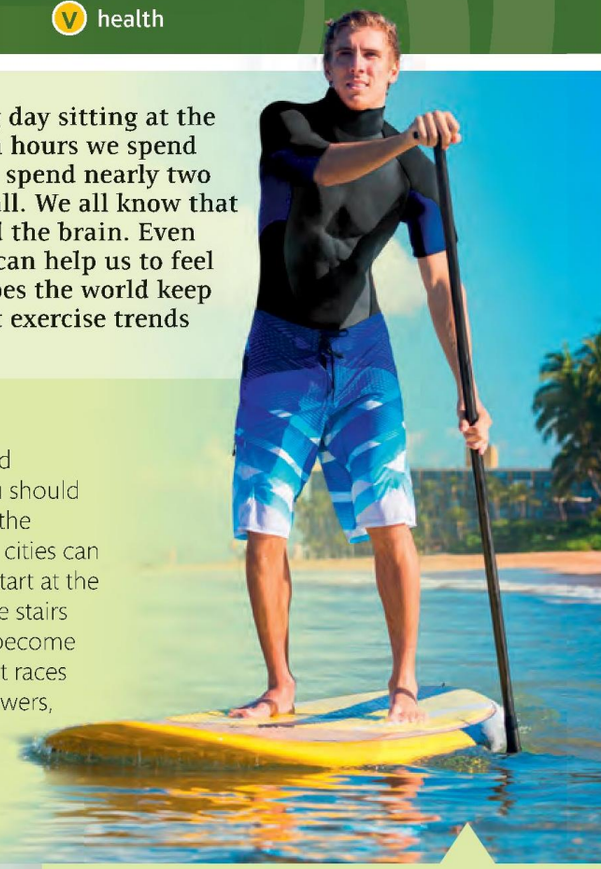
Get moving!

A lot of us spend most of our working day sitting at the computer. If you add this to the seven hours we spend sleeping, we could easily find that we spend nearly two thirds of our day without moving at all. We all know that exercise is good for both the body and the brain. Even a short amount of exercise every day can help us to feel happier and more relaxed. So, how does the world keep fit? We've looked at some of the latest exercise trends from around the world.



TOWERRUNNING China

Have you ever worked in an office block and wondered how you can get fit? Perhaps you should try Towerrunning. It's a sport you can do in the skyscrapers of almost any big city, but Asian cities can be particularly good. All you need to do is start at the bottom of an office tower, and run up all the stairs until you get to the top. Towerrunning has become popular all around the world with important races taking place in some of the world's tallest towers, like Taipei 101, the Empire State Building in New York, and the China World Trade Centre, Beijing.



PILOXING® USA

If you enjoy dance classes like Zumba, but you also want to get rid of your anger, then PILOXING® might be for you. PILOXING® started in the USA, but has travelled quickly to countries like the UK. The sport is a mixture between boxing, pilates and dance. PILOXING® uses the power and speed of boxing, whilst building your muscles and strength with pilates. All of this happens to non-stop loud music, and you learn some great dance moves too.



PADDLE BOARDING Brazil

When it comes to the end of a long day, what could be better than a paddle board on the ocean? It might look easy, but paddle boarding is a tough sport. You need to be strong to keep your balance. However, if you bring your board down to the water at 'golden hour' just before sunset, the water is calm and the ocean will make you forget all your problems.

VOCABULARY

HEALTH

1 A Look at the words/phrases in the box. Are these things good (+) or bad (–) for your health?

junk food	exercise classes	fizzy drinks	fresh fruit/vegetables	
stress/worrying	alcohol	vitamins	running	caffeine	relaxing

B Work in pairs and compare your ideas. Group the vocabulary under the following headings: *food/drink, exercise, general habits*. Can you add any more words/phrases to each group?

C Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.

1 What do you do to keep fit and healthy?
2 Do you do anything which is not healthy?

A: What do you do to keep fit and healthy?
B: I eat lots of fruit. How about you?
A: I cycle to work every day.

▷ page 156 PHOTOBANK

READING

2 A Discuss. What sports can you see in the pictures? Do you know anything about these sports?

B Read the text to find out more information about each sport. Which of the sports would you like to try? Why?/Why not?

C Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

1 According to the article, why is exercise good for you?
2 Why is Towerrunning popular in Asian cities?
3 How is PILOXING® similar to other sports?
4 When is a good time to go paddle boarding? Why?

https://polcet.edu.vn

GRAMMAR

PRESENT PERFECT + *FOR/SINCE*

3 A Read sentences a) and b) and answer questions 1–4 below.

a) I've done paddle boarding *since* 2014.
b) He's lived in Asia *for* five years.

1 When did the speaker in a) start paddle boarding?
2 Is she still paddle boarding now?
3 When did the person in b) move to Asia?
4 Does he still live in Asia?

B Underline the correct alternative to complete the rules.

RULES

1 Use the present perfect to look back at something that started in the past and *finished/continues now*.
2 Use *for/since* to talk about a period of time (how long) and use *for/since* to talk about a point in time (when something started).

C Complete the table with the phrases in the box.

~~2005~~ ~~ages~~ July a long time Saturday
I left university two weeks/months/years 2p.m.
last night an hour or two
I was a child/teenager

for	since
ages	*2005*

▷ page 138 LANGUAGEBANK

4 A Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets and adding *for/since* as appropriate.

1 I _____ (do) karate _____ I was a child.
2 I _____ (have) this phone _____ two months.
3 I _____ (know) Marcia _____ I was at school.
4 We _____ (live) in this town/city _____ ten years.
5 I _____ (want) to buy a new car _____ a long time.

B Change two or three of the sentences so they are true for you. Compare your sentences with a partner.

5 A 6.1 Listen to the questions and write short answers with *for* and *since*. Don't write the questions.

1 by the sea
2 for five years/since 2005

B Work in pairs and compare your answers. Try to remember the questions.

6 6.2 **SENTENCE STRESS** Listen and write the questions. Listen again and underline the stressed words.

1 How long have you lived there?

SPEAKING

7 A Write questions for each topic beginning *Do you …?* and *How long have you …?*



B Work in groups. Ask and answer the questions. Try to find out more information.

***A:* *Do you* have a car?**
***B:* Yes, I do.**
***A:* *How long have you* had it?**
***B:* It's very old. I've had it for about ten years.**
***A:* What kind of car is it?**
***B:* It's a VW Golf.**

C Tell the class about the students in your group.

https://polcet.edu.vn

6.2 THE FUTURE OF FOOD

G *may, might, will*
P intonation: certainty/uncertainty
V food

VOCABULARY

FOOD

1 A Work in pairs. How many types of food can you think of for each of the categories below? Make a list.

vegetables desserts meat fruit

B Compare your lists with other students.

▷ page 157 PHOTOBANK

C Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

1 What is your favourite food?
2 Do you ever eat food from other countries/ cultures? If so, what?
3 Which of the dishes in the photos do you often/ sometimes/never eat? Would you like to try any of them?


falafel


sushi


paella


burrito

LISTENING

2 A Work in pairs. Look at the pictures and read the sentences about food of the future. Do you think they are true (T) or false (F)?

1 In the future, more people may eat insects.



2 In the future, we will be able to make food from mud, wood and seaweed.



3 In the future, kitchen tools (e.g. knives) might give us information about the food in the kitchen.



B 6.3 Listen to an interview with a food expert and check your answers.

C Complete sentences 1–6. Then listen again to check.

1 We may see some changes, things that you might not understand as food g_____.
2 Insects are rich in protein, low in fat, and easy to f_____.
3 Scientists have already found ways to create meat in the l_____.
4 We're also looking at ways to make proteins out of things like mud and wood and also s_____.
5 Other developments on your kitchen table include an intelligent k_____.
6 Really giving people more i_____ about their food.

speakout TIP

When we aren't sure of a word we hear, we can often guess: What letter does the word begin with? How many syllables does it have? Do we recognise the ending of the word (e.g. *-tion, -y, -ed*)? Does the context tell us the type of word (e.g. noun, verb, adjective)? After guessing, check with a friend, your teacher or the audio script.

https://polcet.edu.vn

GRAMMAR

MAY, MIGHT, WILL

3 A Read sentences a)–d) and answer the questions about the phrases in bold.

a) We **might see** them (insects) on menus.
b) We **may see** some changes.
c) An intelligent knife **will tell** you all about the food it's cutting.
d) It tastes awful now, but … it **won't** in the future.

1 Which one is negative?
2 Which ones mean 'probably, but we don't know'?
3 Which one is a strong prediction about the future?

▷ page 138 **LANGUAGEBANK**

B 6.4 **INTONATION: certainty/uncertainty**
Listen to four sentences. In which sentences are the speakers uncertain?

C Listen again. Notice how the speakers say *will, might, may* and *won't*. When the speaker is not sure, do *will, might, may* and *won't* sound longer or shorter?

4 A Write responses to sentences 1–7. Use the prompts in brackets with *might/might not, may/may not* or *will/won't*.

1 We're having a picnic. (rain) *It might rain.*
2 I'm becoming a vegetarian. (lose / weight)
3 Let's go to the best restaurant in town. (be / expensive)
4 I want to stop eating junk food. (feel / healthier)
5 Let's go to the café for breakfast. (not / be / open)
6 I want to try eating octopus. (not / like / it)
7 I'm going to do a cooking course. (enjoy / it)

B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: say something is going to happen. Student B: respond using *may, might, will* or *won't*. Continue the conversation.

A: *We're having a picnic.*
B: *It might rain.*
A: *Don't be so negative! The sun's shining.*
B: *That's true, but you should take an umbrella.*

SPEAKING

5 A Work in pairs. Do you agree with sentences 1–6 below? Tick the four most interesting sentences.

1 In the future, nobody will be hungry for long.
2 People won't eat animals in the future.
3 More people might grow food to save money.
4 Families won't have time to eat together.
5 The next generation may not know how to cook; they will order food on the internet.
6 I might learn how to cook in the future.

B Compare your ideas with other students.

A: *Number 1 might happen, but it won't happen soon.*
B: *I agree. There is enough food in the world, but it is not reaching the people who need it.*

WRITING

SENTENCE STRUCTURE

6 A Work in pairs. Read the extract from a blog below and discuss the questions.

1 When and why did Fernanda move from her home city?
2 What does she say about Colombian food and Colombian cooking?
3 What food did she try in the US and who made it?

how important *is* food *in* your life



Fernanda Huerta-Gonzalez, from Colombia, talks about food.

In my late twenties I moved from my home in Medellin, Colombia, to the United States to continue my studies. It was a good move, but I missed my family and friends. I also missed Colombian food. In my country we have a lot of special dishes like *mondongo* and *peto*, and we take our time preparing food. People say we cook with love!

While in the US, I met other international students, and twice a month we got together and cooked for one another. It was wonderful, and I tasted food from many countries: Libya, Poland, Tunisia, Peru and Japan. I also made many good friends. My time in the US taught me the importance of food as a part of culture and a way to bring people together.

B Compare the two examples below. What do you notice about the length of the sentences?

I was in my late twenties. I went to the United States. I went to continue my studies.
I was in my late twenties when I went to the United States to continue my studies.

speakout TIP

Short sentences may sound unconnected. Long sentences can be difficult to understand. Try to use *and* only once in a sentence. In the next sentence, use *also*. Look at your last piece of writing. Can you use this tip to improve sentence structure?

C Find two examples of the *and/also* pattern in the blog.

D Choose one of the topics in the box below and write a paragraph. Use different sentence lengths.

cooking	restaurants	favourite food	family meals

I love cooking.
One of my favourite restaurants is …

https://polcet.edu.vn

6.3 HOW ARE YOU FEELING?

F seeing the doctor
P difficult words: spelling v. pronunciation
V illness

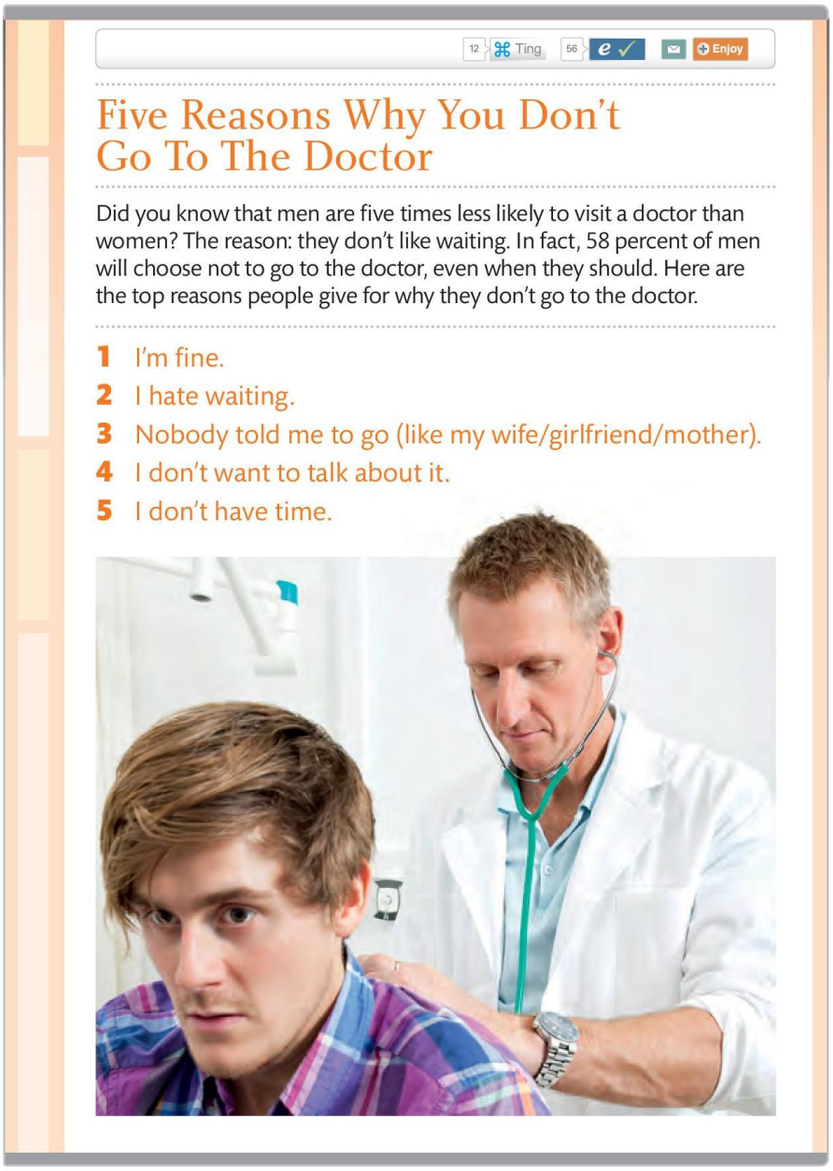
SPEAKING

1 A Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

1 Do you think men or women go to the doctor more often?
2 Why do you think this is?
3 What reasons do you think people give for not going to see a doctor?

B Read the text to check your answers.

C Work in pairs. Discuss. Do you think any of the excuses in the text are good reasons to avoid seeing the doctor?



12 Ting 56 Enjoy

Five Reasons Why You Don't Go To The Doctor

Did you know that men are five times less likely to visit a doctor than women? The reason: they don't like waiting. In fact, 58 percent of men will choose not to go to the doctor, even when they should. Here are the top reasons people give for why they don't go to the doctor.

1 I'm fine.
2 I hate waiting.
3 Nobody told me to go (like my wife/girlfriend/mother).
4 I don't want to talk about it.
5 I don't have time.

VOCABULARY

ILLNESS

2 A Match problems 1–4 below with advice a)–d).

1 You have **got a headache/backache.**
2 You have **caught a cold/flu.**
3 You have **broken your arm/leg.**
4 You have a **sore throat** and a **bad cough**. You also have a **high temperature**.

a) Take some **medicine/antibiotics.**
b) Go to the hospital for an **X-ray.**
c) **Get some rest**, and **drink lots of hot drinks.**
d) Take some **painkillers/pills.**

B 6.5 **DIFFICULT WORDS: spelling versus pronunciation** Check your pronunciation. Listen and repeat.

C Work in pairs. Discuss. What do you do when you have a cold/headache/flu to make yourself feel better?

A: I usually go to bed with a hot drink. How about you?
B: I don't do anything. I just carry on working.

FUNCTION

SEEING THE DOCTOR

3 A 6.6 Listen to two conversations between a doctor and her patients. Answer the questions.

1 What problem(s) does the patient have?
2 What does the doctor suggest?

B Complete sentences 1–6 below with the words in the box.

~~matter~~	problem	hurt	look	worry	pills

1 What's the *matter*?
2 How long have you had this _____?
3 I'll give you some _____.
4 Can I have a _____?
5 Where does it _____?
6 It's nothing to _____ about.

https://polcet.edu.vn



C Complete sentences 1–5 below with the words in the box.

painful	sleep	sick	hurts	worried

1 I feel _____ /terrible.
2 I can't _____.
3 I'm _____ about …
4 It _____ when I walk.
5 It's very _____.

D Listen to the conversations again to check your answers.

▷ page 138 **LANGUAGEBANK**

4 Underline the correct alternative.

1 My head *hurts/pain/sore*.
2 I've got a really bad *flu/cold/sick*.
3 She feels *cough/sick/a temperature*.
4 I think I've *broken/sore/hurting* my arm.
5 Where does it *hurt/pain/sore*?
6 It's nothing to *problem/matter/worry* about.
7 I'll *give/take/look* you some pills.
8 How long have you had this *ill/matter/problem*?

LEARN TO

PREDICT INFORMATION

5 A Work in pairs. Look at the conversation. What do you think the missing words are?

Doctor: What's the [1]_____?
Patient: I've got a really bad [2]_____. I feel [3]_____.
Doctor: How long have you had the [4]_____?
Patient: About a [5]_____.
Doctor: Can I have a [6]_____?
Patient: It's very [7]_____.
Doctor: I'll give you some [8]_____.

B 6.7 Listen to check your answers.

C Listen again and practise saying the phrases.

speakout TIP

When you are going into a situation that you can plan for (a visit to the doctor, a trip to a restaurant, etc.), first try to predict the conversation. This will help you to understand words/phrases when you hear them.

6 Work in pairs. Student A: turn to page 161. Student B: turn to page 163. Role-play the conversations. Before you start, try to predict what the other person will say.

https://polcet.edu.vn

6.4 BBC MONITOR ME

DVD PREVIEW

1 A Read the programme information about *Horizon: Monitor Me*. What type of things will you learn from watching the programme?

Horizon: Monitor Me

Horizon is a BBC documentary series. In this programme, Dr Kevin Fong looks at new **apps** that are changing people's lives. He shows how technology can now **measure** our exercise, sleep, food, drink, etc. When we use this information to **monitor** ourselves, it can improve our health and help us live longer. Dr Fong thinks the new technology might be a revolution in **healthcare**.



B Match the words in bold with meanings 1–4.

1 find out the size or quantity of something
2 carefully watch something to see how it changes over time
3 a small, special programme that you download onto a mobile phone
4 the service that looks after people when they are sick

DVD VIEW

2 A Watch the DVD. What did you learn from the programme about changes in healthcare and self-monitoring?

B Work in pairs. Read the questions and tick the correct options. There may be more than one answer.

1 You might be healthier if you knew how much/many:
  a) steps you took. **d)** people you met.
  b) books you read. **e)** hours you slept.
  c) food you ate.
2 Dr Fong goes to a sports shop to:
  a) see some apps. **b)** look at how bicycles can help health.
3 Blaine Price shows Dr Fong apps that measure:
  a) steps you take. **c)** your food.
  b) your sleep. **d)** information about your heart.
4 The programme also mentions apps that can measure:
  a) your blood-alcohol level. **c)** your telephone use.
  b) how high you can jump.

C Watch the DVD again to check your answers.

3 Work in pairs. Discuss with other students.

1 What do you think of this 'revolution in healthcare'? Is it a good thing for society?
2 Have you ever used an app? Do you think they help/could help you in your daily life?



https://polcet.edu.vn

speakout create a health regime

4 A Read the notes on the health of three people and answer the questions.

1 What health problems do they have now?
2 What problems might they have in the future?

Marcin, 44, machine operator, 1.83 m, 108 kg
Diet: eats mainly junk food, no vegetables, 6 cups of coffee daily
Fitness/Sleep: no exercise, sleeps 7 hours a night
Social life: goes out with friends 3 nights a week
Goal: lose 14 kg and get fit for football

Paulina, 22, student, 1.73 m, 50 kg
Diet: eats fresh fruit/vegetables, no meat, vitamins
Fitness/Sleep: does yoga, sleeps 6 hours a night
Social life: has few friends, stresses about studies
Goal: gain 6.5 kg, have more energy

Alvaro, 68, retired bank manager, 1.75 m, 95 kg
Diet: eats meat twice a day
Fitness/Sleep: has backache (takes painkillers), no exercise, sleeps 8 hours
Social life: many friends, watches TV 6 hours a day
Goal: be fit enough to play with grandchildren

B 6.8 Listen to a health expert saying how one of the three people can improve their health. Which person is the expert talking about?



C Listen again. Tick the key phrases you hear.

KEYPHRASES

To get healthy, you need …
There are some changes he can make.
For example, he needs to [do some exercise/stop eating junk food] …
He could try [going for walks/cycling/doing exercise classes] …
He should spend time [exercising/seeing friends] …
He must lose weight.
Maybe he could [eat less meat/stop drinking fizzy drinks] …
It's a good idea to …

5 A Work with other students. Plan a health regime for the other two people in Exercise 4. Think about how they can become healthier if they change their diet, exercise, and lifestyle.

B Work with another group and compare your ideas.

writeback health advice

6 A Read the problem below and answer the questions.

1 What health problems does Ahmed have?
2 Why is he writing?

I'm worried about my health. Every winter I get sick. I get a cough or a sore throat and sometimes I have a high temperature. I also get really bad headaches. Generally, I try to live healthily. I don't eat much junk food, and I exercise at least once a week. The problem is, I have a stressful job and I never sleep for more than six hours. Winter is coming and I don't want to spend it lying in bed and taking antibiotics. I've heard it's a good idea to monitor my food and exercise, but I'm not sure about this. What can I do?

Ahmed al Muntari

Hi Ahmed, Sorry to hear you have health problems during the winter. That sounds tough! I have a few ideas that might help you. Firstly, …

B Complete the blog post replying to Ahmed. Try to include advice about some of the following: diet, sleep, exercise, using apps to monitor your health.

https://polcet.edu.vn

6.5 LOOKBACK

V HEALTH

1 A Make questions with the prompts below for a class survey.

1 go / exercise classes
2 eat / junk food / drink / fizzy drinks
3 time / relaxing
4 take / vitamins
5 go / running
6 stress / worrying
7 drink / caffeine
8 eat / fresh fruit / vegetables

B Work in groups and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.

C Tell the class what you found out.

G PRESENT PERFECT + *FOR/SINCE*

2 A Write the name of:

1 a place you haven't been to since you were a child
2 something you have only had for a few months
3 someone you have known since you were a teenager
4 something you haven't done since you left school
5 something you have wanted to do for a long time
6 a sport/hobby you have done for more than five years

B Work in pairs and compare your ideas. Ask and answer questions about each thing.

A: I haven't played tennis since I left school. Have you?
B: Yes, I love tennis.

V FOOD

3 Find twelve types of food in the word snake.



4 A Work in pairs. Divide the food in Exercise 3 into these categories. There are two words for each category.

desserts	dairy
fruit	**vegetables**
grains	**meat/seafood**

B Add words to each category.

G *MAY, MIGHT, WILL*

5 A Match statements 1–6 to responses a)–f).

1 I've drunk eight cups of coffee.
2 I've started buying fresh vegetables.
3 I've stopped smoking.
4 I've stopped taking vitamins.
5 I've started doing yoga classes.
6 I've decided to run a marathon.

a) You won't cough all the time.
b) You might feel less stressed.
c) You may get more colds.
d) You may not be fit enough.
e) You will taste the difference.
f) You might not sleep well tonight.

B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: use the prompts in the box to make statements with *I've decided to …* . Student B: respond using *may/may not, might/might not, will/won't*.

buy a house in Monaco
give up eating meat
write a book join a boxing club
get a pet tiger live in Jamaica
become a dancer
do a degree in physics
marry an astronaut
go into politics

A: I've decided to buy a house in Monaco.
B: It might be expensive!

6 Work in groups and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.

1 What do you think may happen to your country in a few years' time?
2 Who do you think will win the next World Cup?
3 Where might you be in five years' time?
4 What job will you do in the future?
5 What will you do on your next birthday?
6 Where will you go on your next holiday?

F SEEING THE DOCTOR

7 A Complete the questions with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

catch feel give break can have

1 Have you (or anyone in your family) ever _____ your arm/leg? Where? How?
2 Do you often _____ colds or flu? What do you do to get better?
3 Is there any food that makes you _____ sick?
4 Do you ever find you _____ not sleep? What do you do?
5 When was the last time the doctor _____ you some pills?
6 What do you do when you _____ got a headache?

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.



https://polcet.edu.vn

7 changes



LIVING THE DREAM p68



THE GREAT IMPOSTOR p70



CAN YOU TELL ME? p72



A GREEK ADVENTURE p74

SPEAKING **7.1** Talk about a life change **7.2** Talk about why people tell lies **7.3** Learn to find out information **7.4** Talk about new experiences

LISTENING **7.1** Listen to a radio programme about a woman who changed her life **7.3** Understand short, predictable conversations **7.4** Watch an extract from the beginning of a BBC film *My Family And Other Animals*

READING **7.2** Read and predict information in a story

WRITING **7.1** Use paragraphs to write about a change **7.4** Write a blog/diary

BBC

INTERVIEWS

How has your life changed in the last ten years?



https://polcet.edu.vn

7.1 LIVING THE DREAM

G *used to*
P weak forms: *used to*
V verbs + prepositions

VOCABULARY

VERBS + PREPOSITIONS

1 A Work in pairs. Discuss. Would you like to change anything in your life? What would you change? Why?

B Read the text. Why do you think many people do not manage to live their dreams?

Living the Dream

Are you bored with your life or your job? Do you do the same thing every day? Perhaps it's time to **look for** something new.

Every year, thousands of people **dream about** changing their lives. Many want to give up their jobs and start a new career, or move house or learn a new skill. Lots of people say they'd like to do something different, like **travel around** the world, or **move to** a new country. But only a few people actually follow their dreams. Around holiday times a quarter of the people in the UK **think about** changing jobs, but when the holiday finishes, they just **go back** to work as normal. Others **wait for** an opportunity their whole lives, but it never comes.

The BBC talked to Jessica Fox, who wanted to **get away** from her life in the California sunshine to move to Scotland and run a second-hand bookshop. She tells about how she made her dream come true.

2 A Complete the sentences with the phrases in bold from the text in Exercise 1B.

1 I sometimes *think about* doing a different job.
2 I really enjoy travelling, but I wouldn't _____ another country to live.
3 I want to give up my job, and _____ to studying.
4 I need to speak English for my job. I _____ becoming a famous journalist.
5 I should _____ a pay rise before I buy a new car.
6 I would love to _____ different countries.
7 Things have been so busy, I just need to _____ for a few days and relax.
8 Can you help me _____ my bag? I can't find it anywhere.

B Tick the sentences that are true for you. Work in pairs and compare your ideas.

speakout TIP

There are many phrases with prepositions in English. Keep a page for phrases with prepositions in your notebook. Write the examples of verbs + prepositions in your notebook. Can you think of any other examples?

LISTENING

3 A Jessica Fox left her dream job in sunny California to move across the world to live in Scotland. Which place would you prefer to live in? Why do you think she moved?

B 7.1 Listen to the interview to find out.



https://polcet.edu.vn

4 A Listen to the interview again and answer the questions.

Part 1

1 Did Jessica enjoy her life in California?
2 What did she dream about?

Part 2

3 What did Jessica do to try and realise her dream?
4 Did she send a lot of emails?

Part 3

5 How did Jessica feel when she went back to LA?
6 What does she enjoy about her life now?

B Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

1 Do you think it was a good idea for Jessica to make this life change? Why/Why not?
2 Would you do this kind of thing yourself?

GRAMMAR

USED TO

5 A Read sentences a)–c) and answer the questions.

a) Jessica used to live in California.
b) She didn't use to work in a bookshop.
c) What did she use to dream about?

1 Did Jessica live in California in the past?
2 Does she live in California now?
3 Did Jessica work in a bookshop in the past?
4 Does she work in a bookshop now?
5 Does question c) ask about the past or present?

B Look at your answers to questions 1–5 above and underline the correct alternatives to complete the rules.

RULES

1 *Used to* describes a habit or situation which was true in the past, but it is not the same now. You can also use the *present/past simple* with a similar meaning, but *used to* emphasises the change.
2 If something *used to* happen, it happened *once/for an extended time*.

▷ page 140 **LANGUAGEBANK**

6 A Find and correct the mistakes. There are mistakes in four of the sentences.

1 When I was a child, I used to cycle to school yesterday.
2 My brother always used listen to heavy metal music.
3 My family used to live in a different city.
4 I used to stay up all night dancing. Now I get tired at 10p.m.
5 We didn't used to have any pets.
6 We used to go skiing in the holidays last year.

B 7.2 Listen to check.

C 7.3 **WEAK FORMS: *used to*** Notice the pronunciation of *used to* /juːstə/. Listen and repeat the phrases.

used_to

D Change the sentences so they are true for you. Compare your sentences with other students.

SPEAKING

7 A Make a note of three things that used to be true about you ten years ago (e.g. appearance, home, work, studies, free time, personality, etc.).

B Work in pairs. Discuss. How have your lives changed? Whose life has changed the most?

WRITING

PARAGRAPHS

8 A Read about Ryan's life-changing decision. Put the sentences in the correct order to complete the paragraphs.

Paragraph 1

One of the best decisions I ever made was to go back to school. *1*

I've always thought that being a teacher would be interesting. __

So I went back to college and did a teacher training course. __

Before that, I was working for a company, but I didn't enjoy my job. __

Paragraph 2

Doing the course wasn't easy. *1*

Now, I have a teaching qualification, and I'm doing the job I've always wanted to do. __

So I used to study in the evenings. __

For example, I had to work to earn money, and find time to do coursework. __

B In each paragraph find sentences which:

1 contain the main idea
2 support the idea
3 finish or conclude the paragraph

C Write about a decision which changed your life. Write your story in paragraphs. Use sentences to introduce and support the idea and conclude the paragraph.

One of the best decisions I ever made was _____. I wanted to _____. So I _____. _____ wasn't easy because _____. But _____. Now, I _____.

https://polcet.edu.vn

7.2 THE GREAT IMPOSTOR

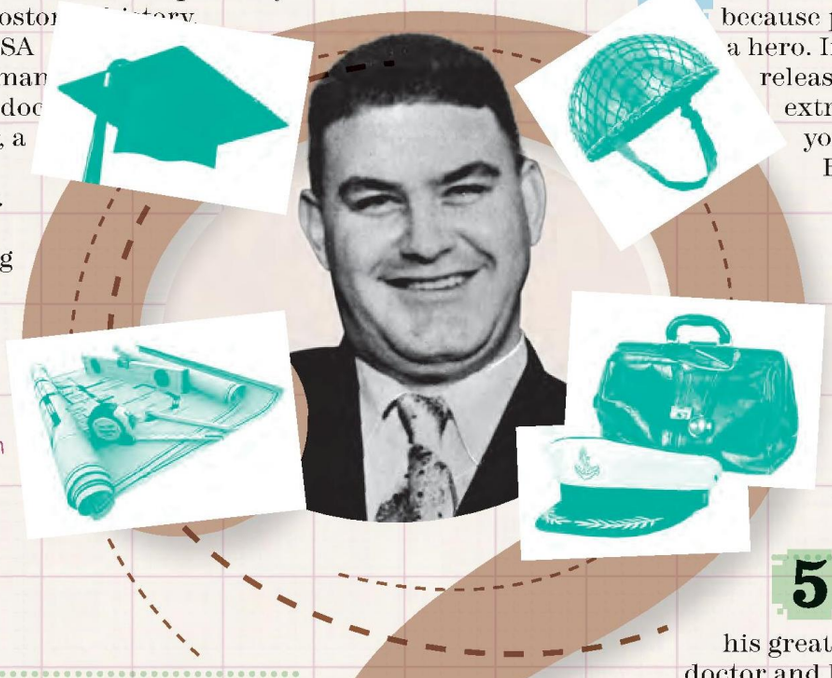
G purpose, cause and result
P rhythm in complex sentences
V collocations

1 Ferdinand Waldo Demara was probably the greatest impostor [illegible]story. He was born in the USA in 1921. As a young man he pretended to be a doctor, an engineer, a lawyer, a university professor, a soldier and a sailor. Demara's greatest adventure was during the Korean War.

What did he do?

a) He pretended to be a doctor on a ship.
b) He worked for the Korean government.
c) He pretended to be a politician.

Read 6 to find out



2 Demara pretended to be a teacher and the police caught him. He spent six months in prison. After this, he played one more role. He appeared in a 1960 film (called *The Hypnotic Eye*) to make some money, acting as a doctor. But real fame arrived in 1961 when Hollywood made a film of Demara's life.

3 The bullet was very close to the soldier's heart. Demara studied from a book so that he could save the man's life. He removed the bullet and the soldier lived. In fact, while Demara worked as a doctor, none of his patients died. But in the end he became too successful.

What happened?

a) He appeared on TV and his friends recognised him.
b) His photo and false name appeared in a newspaper.
c) He became a film star.

Read 5 to find out

4 Demara didn't go to prison because people thought he was a hero. Instead the police released him and gave him extra money to say 'thank you' for his great work! But later the police arrested him for a different crime.

What did he do?

a) He robbed a bank.
b) He pretended to be a policeman.
c) He pretended to be a teacher.

Read 2 to find out

5 Demara became famous because of his great work as the ship's doctor and his photo appeared in some newspapers in Canada. The mother of the real Dr Cyr saw the photo. She knew this was not her son, so she told the police and they arrested him.

What happened next?

a) He went to prison. **b)** He didn't go to prison. **c)** He escaped to Europe.

Read 4 to find out

6 In 1951 Demara pretended to be Dr Joseph Cyr (a real doctor) so that he could work on a ship. The soldiers loved him! He cured their illnesses, he pulled out bad teeth and he performed difficult operations. He had his greatest moment after a soldier was shot.

What did he do?

a) He jumped into the sea and helped the soldier.
b) He pretended to be the dead soldier.
c) He performed an operation that saved the soldier's life.

Read 3 to find out

READING

1 A Look at the photo of a famous impostor and the tools he used in different jobs. Who/What do you think this man pretended to be?

> **im.pos.tor, imposter** /ɪm'pɒstə/ /ɪm'pɑstɚ/ *noun* someone who pretends to be someone else in order to trick people
>
> From Longman WordWise Dictionary.

B Read the story. As you read, stop at each question and, with a partner, guess the answer. Then read to find out.

2 Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

1 Why do you think Demara did these things?
2 Do you think he was a good man?
3 Do you think people like Demara should be punished?

https://polcet.edu.vn

VOCABULARY

COLLOCATIONS

3 A Match 1–7 with a)–g) to make collocations (words that go together).

1 cure	a) successful/famous
2 make a	b) a role/a part in a film
3 save	c) film/documentary
4 become	d) a crime/a murder
5 be arrested for	e) a man's life/money
6 spend	f) illnesses/people
7 play	g) six months in prison/time abroad

B Work in pairs. Re-tell the story of Demara's life using the collocations above.

speakout TIP

Many words come in pairs, e.g. *cure illnesses*, *become famous*. When you hear or read collocations, write them in your notebook. Think of other words that go with *play* and *make*.

GRAMMAR

PURPOSE, CAUSE AND RESULT

4 A Complete sentences 1–3 with *so*, *to* or *because*.

Purpose (the reason for an action)

1 He appeared in a 1960 film _____ make some money.

Cause (it makes something happen)

2 Demara didn't go to prison _____ people thought he was a hero.

Result (the consequence of something)

3 She knew this was not her son, _____ she told the police.

B Check your answers in the text in Exercise 1.

C Look again at the text in Exercise 1 and find more examples of *so*, *to* or *because*.

▷ page 140 **LANGUAGEBANK**

5 A Underline the correct alternative.

1 I'm doing an English course *so/to/because* improve my speaking.
2 I'll do many jobs in the future *so/to/because* I like to try different things.
3 I'd like to become famous *so/to/because* I'm going to study acting.
4 You need to communicate well *so/to/because* become successful in my job.
5 I'd like to make a film about my life *so/to/because* I've had many great experiences.
6 I'd love to spend time abroad *so/to/because* experience another culture.
7 I'm going to take an exam *so/to/because* I have to study a lot.
8 It's difficult to be an impostor *so/to/because* you can never relax.

B 7.4 **RHYTHM IN COMPLEX SENTENCES** Listen to the answers. As you listen, follow the words on the page with your finger. Listen again and say the sentences at the same time.

C Are any of the sentences true for you? Work in pairs and compare your ideas.

6 Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: make sentences with phrases from A. Use the past simple. Student B: complete Student A's sentence with phrases from B and *so*, *to* or *because*.

A: I went to the cinema …
B: … to watch a film.
A: I studied my notes …
B: … because I had an exam.



SPEAKING

7 A Discuss the questions below.

1 Why do people tell lies about their lives?
2 When might you tell a lie?

B Work in pairs. Read the situations below and discuss. Would you tell a lie in these situations? Why/Why not?

1 An employee at your company is bad at her job. She tells you a secret: she used false documents (CV and references) to get her job. The boss asks you about her.
2 Your best friend introduces her new boyfriend to you. You don't like him because he doesn't listen or care about anyone else. Your friend asks for your opinion of him.
3 A friend buys a designer bag for $50 from a man on the street. She says the bag usually costs $300 so she bought it. You know the bag isn't a real designer bag. She asks if you want one.

https://polcet.edu.vn

7.3 CAN YOU TELL ME?

F finding out information
P intonation: checking information
V facilities



"Read 1,000 books and walk 1,000 miles"

... is a Chinese saying about education. And this is exactly what students from the People's Republic of China are doing. Thousands of Chinese students have joined students from Europe, India, the USA, Saudi Arabia and other countries to study at UK universities. So, how do they feel about coming to the UK? 'It's difficult at first,' says Yi Lina, a student at Bristol University. 'Everything is very different: the food, the people. But it gets easier. You open a bank account, get a mobile phone contract, and start talking to people. It has been a great experience.'

SPEAKING

1 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

1 Is there a university in your town? What can you study there?
2 Would you like to study in another country? Why/Why not?

2 Read the text. What do the students think about studying abroad?

VOCABULARY

FACILITIES

3 A Match 1–5 with the places in the box.

study centre bookshop cafeteria library stationery shop main reception classroom photocopying room lecture theatre accommodation/welfare office registration desk

1 borrow a book
2 buy pens, paper and notebooks
3 register for a new course
4 buy a snack
5 find information about where you are staying

B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: say a place. Student B: say what you can do there.

A: What can you do in a photocopying room?
B: You can make photocopies.

C Discuss. Which of these facilities can you find in your language school/university? Where are they? Which of them do you often/never use?

FUNCTION

FINDING OUT INFORMATION

4 A Make questions with the prompts below.

a) where / register for my course 1
Where do I register for my course?
b) where / the study centre __
c) what time / the library open __
d) can / help / find my classroom __
e) where / use the internet __
f) where / buy a notebook __
g) where / get a new student card __
h) can / tell me / where / go (for information about ...) __

B 7.5 Listen to the situations. Number the questions above in the order you hear them.

https://polcet.edu.vn

5 Listen again. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

1 The registration desk is in the main reception.
2 The study centre is next to the cafeteria.
3 There is internet in the library.
4 The library is open from ten until five every day.
5 You can get a new student card from the main reception.
6 Room 301 is on the third floor on the right.
7 The stationery shop is upstairs.
8 The welfare office is next to the stationery shop.

6 A Complete the phrases with the words in the box.

can	excuse	have	need	help	time	kind

Getting attention

[1]_____ me, …
Could you [2]_____ me?
Can you tell me where/what … ?

Asking for information

Where [3]_____ I get/find/buy … ?
When can I use/start … ?
What [4]_____ is the library open?
What time do the lessons start?
Can I … ?
Do I [5]_____ to … ?
Is it free/open/near?
I [6]_____ to find out about/speak to …

Thanking someone

Thank you so much.
That's very [7]_____.

B Read audio script 7.5 on page 172 to check your answers.

▷ page 140 LANGUAGEBANK

7 Find and correct the mistakes. There are two mistakes in each conversation.

1 **A:** Excuse to me, where's the bookshop?
B: There's one around corner.
2 **A:** What time do the swimming pool open?
B: During the week it opens on eight o'clock. At the weekend it opens at nine.
3 **A:** Can tell me where to get a student card, please?
B: You need going to reception.
4 **A:** Where I can get a coffee?
B: There's a cafeteria over there, next the library.

8 Work in pairs. Student A: turn to page 165. Student B: turn to page 166.

LEARN TO

CHECK AND CONFIRM INFORMATION

9 A 7.6 Read and listen to the different ways of checking information in bold below.

Extract 1
B: Do you know where the main reception is?
A: Sorry?

Extract 2
C: It's next to the cafeteria.
A: The cafeteria? Where's that?

Extract 3
A: Do I have to pay?
D: No.
A: So, it's free for students.

Extract 4
E: It's open every day, from 9a.m. until 6p.m.
A: Did you say 'every day'?

Extract 5
A: I need to find out about my accommodation. Can you tell me where to go?
I: Accommodation? I think you have to go to the welfare office.

B What are the speakers doing in each conversation?

a) repeating the key words/phrases as a question
b) asking a checking question/asking for repetition
c) rephrasing

C 7.7 **INTONATION: checking information** Listen and repeat the phrases in bold in Exercise 9A. How does the intonation change?

10 Work in pairs. Role-play the situation below. Student A: you are a student. You have lost your bag. Student B: you work at the reception desk.

Student — **Receptionist**

Explain the situation.
Find out exactly what happened.
Ask what you need to do.
Explain that he/she needs to go to the welfare office and complete a form.
Ask where the welfare office is.
Give directions.
Check that you understand what you have to do/ask for repetition.
Repeat any information.
Thank the receptionist.

https://polcet.edu.vn

7.4 BBC A GREEK ADVENTURE

DVD PREVIEW

1 Work in pairs. Discuss. Do you ever have problems trying to communicate with people who can't speak your language? Where? What happens? What can you do to help make yourself understood in situations like this?

2 Read the programme information. Where do the family move to? Why?

My Family And Other Animals

My Family And Other Animals is a BBC film based on Gerald Durrell's book. It tells the story of the Durrells, a rather unusual family: Gerry – a twelve-year-old who loves animals, his sister Margo, his brother Leslie, his eldest brother, the writer Lawrence, and their mother. One wet grey day in the 1930s the family decide to escape the English weather. They sell their house and move to the sunny island of Corfu in Greece. Here they experience a new life of freedom and adventure. But the beginning isn't easy, so they are delighted when they make a new friend, Spiro.



DVD VIEW

3 A What kind of problems do you think the family might have? Do you think life will be better or worse for the family? Why? Watch the DVD to find out.

B Number the scenes in the correct order.

a) The family are at home in London. It's August, but they do not feel well. *1*
b) The family look for a house to live in, but they cannot find one with a bathroom.
c) They meet Spiro and he finds them a beautiful house (villa).
d) They decide to look by themselves, so they try to get a taxi.
e) They arrive on a boat and the customs officer checks their suitcases.

4 A What do they say? Use the words in the box to complete the sentences.

sunshine	bathroom	Greek	tourists
language	place		

1 'It's August. We need _____ … Why don't we pack up and go?'
2 'You've shown us ten houses, and none of them has a _____.'
3 'They must have bathrooms. We'll find a _____ ourselves.'
4 'We don't actually speak _____.'
5 'You need someone who talks your _____?'
6 'There. Villa with bathrooms.' 'We'll _____ it.'

B Watch the DVD again to check.

5 Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

1 Which character do you like best? Why?
2 Where do tourists like to go when they visit your country? What problems do they have?

https://polcet.edu.vn

speakout a new experience

6 A 7.8 **Listen to Agata talking about when she moved to the USA. Answer the questions.**

1 What was the problem?
2 How did she feel?
3 What happened in the end?

B Listen again and tick the key phrases you hear.

KEYPHRASES

It was my first day at …
The biggest problem was …
I felt very [nervous/shy/excited/…] when …
I couldn't …
I didn't know …
I wasn't …
Luckily, I met/made friends with …
In the end, …

7 A Talk about a new experience (e.g. when you moved to a new place/started a new course/job). Before you speak, think about the questions below. Make some notes.

1 Where were you?
2 How did you feel?
3 Did you have any problems?
4 What did you do about them?
5 Did you meet anyone who helped you?
6 What happened in the end?

B Work in groups and take turns. Tell each other about your experiences.

writeback a blog/diary

8 A Read part of a web diary about Sadie's first year at university and answer the questions.

1 Is she enjoying university life?
2 Did she have any problems? What were they?

Search

POST ARCHIVE REGISTER CONTACT US

So far … so good

I moved to Turkey in July to go to Bilkent University and I am really enjoying the experience so far. It's been a fantastic year. I've really enjoyed living somewhere so new and exciting, but I miss my family and friends at home. I've met lots of people and I love living in this big city. There is always so much to see and do, and Turkish people are so friendly. It's very different to living at home. When I first arrived, I used to get lost around the city. Now, I enjoy exploring and finding out about new places.

B Write a blog/diary about your new experience. Use the questions in Exercise 7A and the structure below to help you.

One thing that has really changed in my life is _____. I decided to _____ so that/to _____. Before that, I used to _____. At first, _____, because _____, but _____. In the end, _____.

https://polcet.edu.vn

7.5 LOOKBACK

V VERBS + PREPOSITIONS

1 A **Complete the phrases with a suitable preposition.**

1 What do you dream _____ doing in the future?
2 Would you like to travel _____ the world? Which countries would you like to visit?
3 Would you like to get _____ from work/school for a few days? Where would you go?
4 Would you ever move _____ a different town/city? Why/ Why not?
5 Are you thinking _____ making any changes to your life at the moment? What are they?
6 Would you like to go _____ to your last school for a day?

B **Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.**

G *USED TO*

2 A **Make questions with the prompts. Begin with *Did you use to … ?***

When you were a child:

1 you / work / hard / school?
2 you / eat / fast food?
3 you / spend / time / your grandparents?
4 you / get / ill / often?
5 you / have / special friend?
6 you / play any sport?
7 you / travel to school / public transport?
8 you / live / different place?

B **Choose two or three of the questions above and write two more related questions.**

C **Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.**

A: *Did you use to work hard at school?*
B: *Yes, I did.*
A: *What subjects did you use to enjoy?*
B: *I used to enjoy art and drama.*
A: *Really? Did you use to get good exam results?*
B: *Well, most of the time …*

V COLLOCATIONS

3 A **Underline the correct alternative in sentences 1–8 below.**

1 The doctor *cured/cared* me.
2 This hero *rescued/saved* my life!
3 Sometimes businesses can *become/develop* very successful.
4 My friend Jack *spends/goes* most of his time watching TV.
5 She lost her job after being arrested *by/for* a crime.
6 The criminal *spent/passed* ten months in prison.
7 I *played/was* the role of Hamlet.
8 I would like to *build/make* a film.

B **Work in pairs. Add another sentence to sentences 1–8 above.**

The doctor cured me. Then I married him!

G PURPOSE, CAUSE AND RESULT

4 A **Match 1–8 with a)–h) to make sentences.**

1 I went to the library last week
2 I helped my friend
3 I wanted to eat out
4 I studied
5 I put my feet up and watched TV so
6 I called some old friends to
7 I went to bed late because
8 I went to a meeting

a) to improve my English.
b) I was at a party.
c) to discuss business.
d) hear their news.
e) I could relax.
f) to find a book.
g) because she had a problem.
h) so I went to a restaurant.

B **Work in pairs. Choose four phrases from 1–8 above. Make questions to ask what your partner did last week.**

A: *Did you go to the library?*
B: *Yes, I did.*
A: *Why?*
B: *To find a book.*

F FINDING OUT INFORMATION

5 A **Put the sentences in the correct order to complete the conversations.**

Conversation 1

a) Excuse me, could you help me? *1*
b) Thank you. And what's your surname? __
c) Do you have a registration form? __
d) Your course? OK. Do you have a registration form? __
e) I need to find out about my course. __
f) Sorry? __
g) Oh, yes. In my bag. Here it is. __
h) It's Gorski. __
i) Yes, of course. What can I do for you? __

Conversation 2

a) At reception? __
b) The swimming pool opens at eight o'clock. __
c) OK, thanks. Is it free for students? __
d) Yes, that's right. __
e) Thanks very much. __
f) No, it's not free, but it's cheaper if you have a student card. __
g) Yes, show your card at reception when you come in. __
h) Eight. OK. So, do I have to bring my student card? __
i) Excuse me, could you tell me what time the swimming pool opens? __

B **Work in pairs and practise the conversations.**



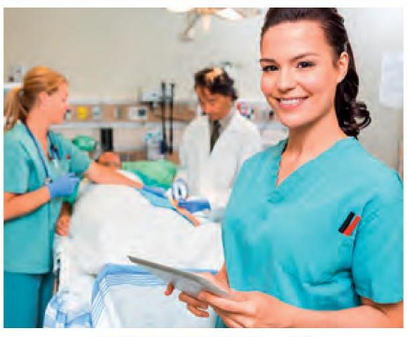
https://polcet.edu.vn

8 money





TREASURE HUNT p78



PAY ME MORE! p80



I'M JUST LOOKING p82



SOLEREBELS p84

SPEAKING **8.1** Talk about a product that people should invest in **8.2** Talk about why you should earn more cash **8.3** Describe items; go shopping **8.4** Present a business idea

LISTENING **8.2** Listen to a discussion about salaries **8.4** Watch an extract from the BBC news about an Ethiopian business

READING **8.1** Read the story of a treasure hunt **8.3** Read a questionnaire about shopping tips

WRITING **8.2** Write an opinion piece **8.4** Write an idea for a business investment

BBC

INTERVIEWS

How do you feel about shopping?



https://polcet.edu.vn

8.1 TREASURE HUNT

G relative clauses
P pronouncing the letter 's'
V money

VOCABULARY

MONEY

1 A Read the money questionnaire. What do you think the words in bold mean?

B Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

C 8.1 **PRONOUNCING THE LETTER 'S'** Underline each example of the letter 's' in the words in bold in the questionnaire. How many ways is it pronounced? Listen and check.

D How do you say the letter 's' in these words: measure, earns, tips, profession, credit cards, lends, imposter, souvenir?

How do you earn, save and spend your money?

1 Do you usually pay by **cash** or **credit card** when you buy things?
2 Do you ever **lend** money to family or friends? Why/Why not?
3 Have you ever **borrowed** a lot of money? What for?
4 How many **notes** or **coins** do you have in your pocket at the moment?
5 In your country, how much do you **tip** waiters?
6 Which three people do you think **earn** the most money in your country?
7 Have you ever **invested** money **in** something?
8 Who pays the **bills** where you live?
9 Which of your **possessions** is **worth** the most to you?
10 Have you ever thought of hunting for **treasure**?

▷ page 158 **PHOTOBANK**

READING

2 A Discuss the questions.

1 Do you know any true stories or films that involved hunting for treasure?
2 The man in the photo was very rich and very ill. What is his connection with the treasure chest? Guess, and tell your partner. Read to find out.

B Discuss in pairs. What are the connections between:

1 1988 … and … Fenn hiding the treasure?

He was diagnosed with cancer in 1988. He wanted to leave something for the world after his death, so he hid the treasure chest.

2 a poem in Fenn's autobiography … and … the treasure chest?
3 new clues … and … tourism in the area?
4 13,000 … and … 18?
5 the Air Force … and … an art gallery?

C What do you think of Fenn's treasure hunt? Do you like the idea? Why/Why not?

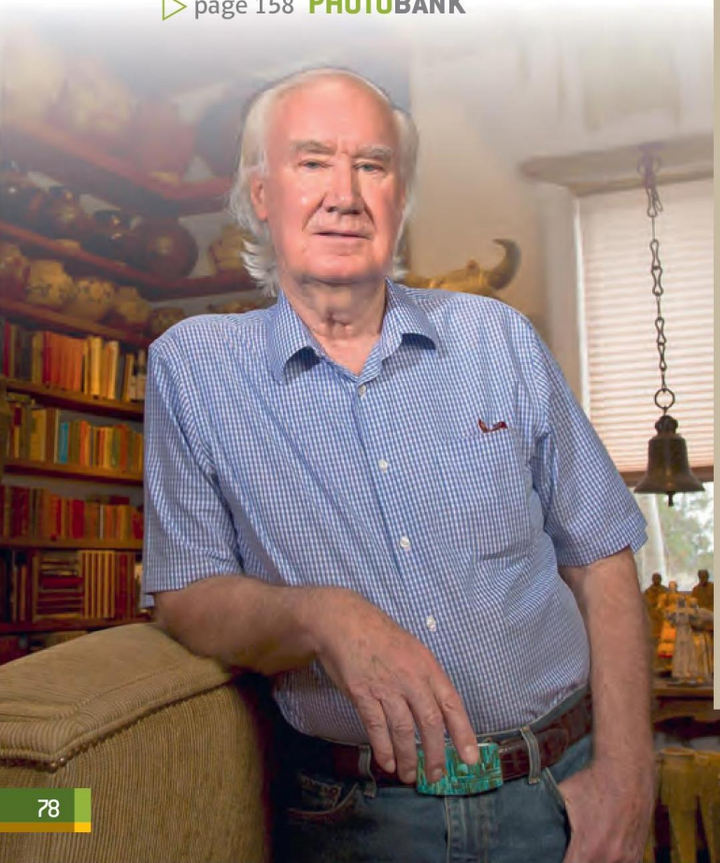
Hidden Treasure

In 1988, US millionaire Forrest Fenn was diagnosed with cancer. Thinking that his life was nearly over, he wanted to leave something to the world. Then he had a rather interesting idea. He decided to fill a wooden chest with treasure and hide it.

He included old gold coins, ancient animal figures, and antique jewellery, all covered in gold dust, and left the chest somewhere in the desert, probably in New Mexico, where he lives. Then he published his autobiography and included in it a poem which contained clues about where the treasure was hidden. Against all expectations, Fenn recovered from cancer, so he has lived to see the success of his plan.

He says his idea was to provide people with an adventure: hunting outside, with the chance of getting rich. He loves stories and adventures and he clearly enjoys the attention his plan has brought him. Every few months he releases a new clue, just to keep treasure hunters interested. It seems it is working: he has received more than 13,000 emails from people that want more clues, as well as 18 marriage proposals! There are blogs that describe Fenn's treasure hunt, and tourism in the area has increased, thanks to people who want to find the chest.

Fenn was originally from a poor family in Texas. As a child, he spent his summers in Yellowstone National Park, which is where he first discovered his love of the outdoors. After a career in the Air Force, he eventually opened an art gallery in Santa Fe, making his money by buying and selling paintings. He also became known for organising amazing parties which were attended by all kinds of famous people. Now he lives with his wife, happily looking on as treasure hunters arrive in his home town.





https://polcet.edu.vn

GRAMMAR

RELATIVE CLAUSES

3 Read sentences 1–5 and complete the rules below.

1 He included a poem **which** contained clues.
2 There are blogs **that** describe Fenn's treasure hunt.
3 Tourism has increased, thanks to people **who** want to find the chest.
4 He has received more than 13,000 emails from people **that** want more clues.
5 He probably hid it in New Mexico, **where** he lives.

RULES

Relative clauses tell you:
• which thing, person or place we are talking about.
• what a thing, person or place is or does.
Use [1] *which* or [2] _____ for things.
Use [3] _____ or [4] _____ for people.
Use [5] _____ for places.

▷ page 142 **LANGUAGEBANK**

4 A Read sentences 1–3 below. Which things in the box do they describe?

~~casino~~	inventor	library
wallet	DVD player	investor
bank	credit card	

1 It's a place where you go to win money. *casino*
2 It's a thing that you use when you want to pay without cash.
3 It's a person who creates new things.

B Use the prompts below to write definitions for the other things in the box above.

1 place / people look after / your money
2 thing / use / carry / money and credit cards
3 person / gives money / to a product or business (to make more money)
4 place / you go / borrow books
5 thing / use / watch films

C Work in pairs. Student A: turn to page 164. Student B: turn to page 167.

SPEAKING

5 A Work in pairs. Read about what some super-rich people do with their money, and discuss the questions.

1 Which projects/donations do you think are the most useful for the world?
2 Are there any that you think are not especially useful? Why?
3 Do you know of any other super-rich people who do interesting things with their money?

B If you had billions of dollars to invest in something interesting or useful, what project would you start? Think about who it would help, where you would do it, and how long it would last.





What interesting things do the super-rich do with their money?

- Amazon boss, Jeff Bezos, is building an enormous clock inside a mountain; the clock is designed to last 10,000 years.
- TV star, Oprah Winfrey, built a school in South Africa to educate girls from poor families.
- Economist, Muhammad Yunus, founded Grameen Bank, which gives small loans to the poor to start businesses.
- Richard Branson is working to send tourists into space. His company, Virgin Galactic, has spent millions developing commercial spaceships for transporting tourists.



https://polcet.edu.vn

8.2 PAY ME MORE!

G too much/many, enough, very
P multi-word verb stress
V multi-word verbs



LISTENING

1 A Look at the infographic about the pay for different jobs. Discuss the questions.

1 Are you surprised by any of these figures?
2 Why do you think the high earners make so much money?

B 8.2 Listen to three people saying why they should be paid more. As you listen, complete the table.

speaker	job	difficulties with job	should earn more because …
1	nanny	1 _____	2 _____
2	3 _____	4 _____	save people, buildings, businesses
3	5 _____	hard to get funding	6 _____

C Listen again and discuss the questions.

1 Which speaker (1, 2 or 3) says:
   a) he/she doesn't want a bigger salary for him/herself? What does he/she want?
   b) some people are 'stupid'? Why?
   c) he/she does extra work? What type of work?
2 Who do you think makes the best argument for more money?

GRAMMAR

TOO MUCH/MANY, ENOUGH, VERY

2 A Read sentences 1–6 from the recording. Match the words in bold with meanings a)–f) below.

1 Scientists spend **too much** time applying for grants. b
2 **Too many** of us do extra work like cleaning. __
3 We should earn **enough** just from being a nanny. __
4 Nannies **aren't paid enough.** __
5 It's **too** dangerous **to** be paid so little. __
6 Some of our projects are **very** expensive. __

a) should earn more
b) more (time) than necessary
c) so (dangerous) that they should be paid more
d) really
e) the right amount
f) more (people) than necessary

B Look at the cartoons below. Underline the correct alternative to complete the rule.

RULES

1 Use *too much/too many* with countable nouns.
2 Use *too much/too many* with uncountable nouns.



page 142 LANGUAGEBANK

3 Underline the correct alternative.

1 I don't have *enough time/time enough/very many time* to do the things I enjoy.
2 I drink *too many/much/too much* coffee.
3 I do some *too/enough/very* difficult tasks in my work.
4 I am sometimes *very/enough/too* busy to study English.
5 I spend *very much/too many/too much* hours online.
6 Did you have *the enough/enough/too many* to eat or do you want more?

4 A Complete the sentences so they are true for you.

1 In my work/studies, I worry too much about …
2 One thing that makes me very happy about my work/studies is …
3 During my working day, I don't have enough time to …
4 One thing that is too difficult for me is …
5 These days too many people …

B Work in pairs and compare your sentences.

https://polcet.edu.vn

VOCABULARY

MULTI-WORD VERBS

5 A **Look at sentences 1–6. What do you think the multi-word verbs in bold mean? Match the verbs with the definitions a)–f).**

1 If you're talented and you want to be famous, you should never **give up**. __
2 Even the best jobs can **turn into** a nightmare if you have a bad boss. __
3 In my country it's common for men to **take over** their father's job. __
4 You should never **turn down** a dream job even if the salary is bad. __
5 I think rich people should **give back** some of their money to the community. __
6 In many jobs, e.g. teaching, paperwork **takes up** too much time. __

a) stop trying (to do something difficult or important)
b) return something (to someone) or give something to someone because they have done something for you
c) use or fill an amount of time or space
d) become responsible for something (e.g. a job), replacing the person who did it before you
e) refuse an offer
f) become

B **Do you agree with sentences 1–6? Compare your ideas with a partner.**

C 8.3 **MULTI-WORD VERB STRESS** **Which words are stressed in multi-word verbs? Listen to check.**

6 **Answer questions 1–5 and compare your ideas with other students.**

1 Would you like to take over your father or your mother's job?
2 Have you ever done a job/task that turned into a nightmare? What happened?
3 What boring tasks take up your time?
4 Have you ever turned down a good offer?
5 Why do you think so many people give up trying to learn a foreign language?

speakout TIP

A multi-word verb is a verb + preposition/adverb, e.g. *wake up*. Multi-word verbs often have a different meaning from the individual words in them. Always write down multi-word verbs in example sentences: *I wake up at 7a.m.* Write some multi-word verbs that you know. Ask your partner to think of example sentences.

SPEAKING

7 A **Think about your answers to questions 1 and 2.**

1 What do the people in photos A–F below do? Who should earn the most money? Why?
2 Think of three reasons why you or people in your (future) profession should get more money.

B **Compare your ideas with other students.**



WRITING

ADDING EMPHASIS

8 A **Read the extract from an opinion piece. What is the main idea?**

1 The economy is bad.
2 Many nurses are changing profession.
3 Nurses should get a higher salary.

B **Look at the words in bold and answer the questions with a partner.**

1 What type of word comes after them?
2 Which of the words in bold is the strongest?
3 Which is the weakest?

These are **extremely** difficult times for many professions – the economy is **very** weak – but we need to pay our nurses better. Many nurses cannot retire at 60 as they used to because they aren't sure they will have enough money to support themselves. This means newly qualified nurses are finding it harder to get jobs. While people used to think the profession was **fairly** secure (the sick and the old will always need care), these days it has become **really** clear that the job is changing. Working conditions are getting harder, but the pay is not increasing.

C **Choose a job in Exercise 7 or your own job/future job. Write the first paragraph of an opinion piece saying why the job deserves a higher salary. Include the words in bold above.**

https://polcet.edu.vn

8.3 I'M JUST LOOKING

F buying things
P weak forms: *do you/can I*
V shopping



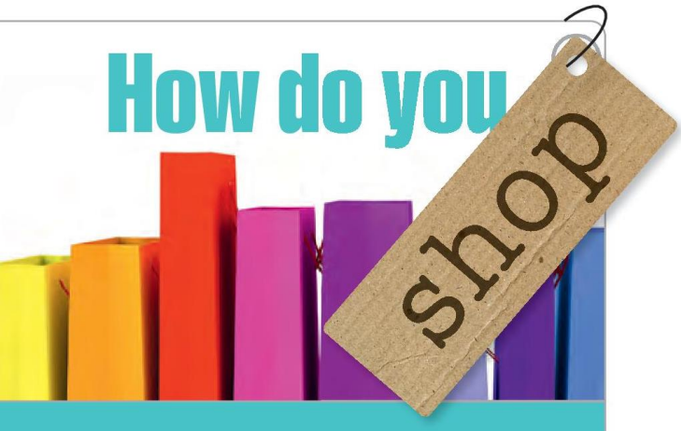




VOCABULARY

SHOPPING

1 A Work in pairs. Which of the words in bold are represented in the photos A–E?



1 Do you enjoy **window shopping**? Why/Why not?
2 Do you prefer to shop in **department stores** or in **markets**?
3 Do you find **prices** better if you **buy online**? What kind of things do you buy?
4 Do you like shopping when there's a **sale**? Why/Why not?
5 Do you like buying products by particular **brands**? Can you give examples?
6 What is the most **expensive** thing you bought recently? Where did you buy it?

B Discuss the questions.

FUNCTION

BUYING THINGS

2 A 8.4 Listen to five conversations in shops. What are the people buying? Underline the correct answer.

1 food / we don't know / books
2 a carpet / a computer / clothes
3 clothes / hair products / we don't know
4 a musical instrument / a mobile phone / cleaning products
5 a candle / a credit card / we don't know

B Complete the phrases below with the words in the box.

for	here	of	enter	on	cash	me

Customer
Excuse [1]_____.
I'm just looking.
Do you sell …?
Do you have one [2]_____ these in red/blue/a larger size?
Can I try it/this [3]_____?
Where's the fitting room?
It doesn't fit/It fits. I'll take it.

Shop assistant
Can I help (you)?
Are you looking [4]_____ anything in particular?
Who's next, please?
Are you paying by [5]_____ or credit card?
Can you [6]_____ your PIN, please?
Can you just sign [7]_____, please?

C Listen again to check.

https://polcet.edu.vn







3 8.5 **WEAK FORMS: *do you/can I*** Listen to the questions. Notice how *Do you …?* and *Can I …?* are pronounced. Listen again and repeat the questions.

Do_you sell pens? /dʒuː/
Can_I try it on? /kənaɪ/

4 Work in pairs. Look at audio script 8.4 on page 173 and practise the conversations.

▷ page 142 **LANGUAGEBANK**

5 Work in pairs. Use the prompts to practise the conversation.

Student A

help?
Hello. Can I help you?

colour?

some / over there

yes / here you are

yes / fitting room / there

fit / OK?

want / pay / credit card?

here's your receipt

bye

Student B

look / for / shirt
Hi, I'm looking for a shirt.

white

larger size?

try / on?

thank you

fine / take it

yes

thank you / bye

6 Work in pairs. Student A: turn to page 163. Student B: turn to page 166. Role-play the situations.

LEARN TO

DESCRIBE THINGS

7 A Look at the phrases in bold. Which are used for countable nouns and which for uncountable nouns?

1 **A:** Hi there. Are you looking for anything in particular?
B: Yeah, do you sell **those things that** soldiers wear? Er … it's like a jacket.
2 **A:** Hello. I was wondering if you've got any of **that stuff you use for** clean**ing** swimming pools.
B: Um … yeah, we usually sell a liquid cleaner.

B Put the phrases in bold in the correct place in the conversation.

1 **It's a type of**
A: What are you looking for?
B: Pen. You use it to write on walls.
2 **It's a kind of**
A: Are you looking for anything in particular?
B: Yes. Oil that you use for cooking.

SPEAKING

8 A Think of an example of a type of clothing, a type of food and something you use in the house.

B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: describe your things. Student B: guess what they are.

A: *It's a type of clothing that you wear around your neck when it's cold.*
B: *A scarf!*

https://polcet.edu.vn

8.4 BBC SOLEREBELS

DVD PREVIEW

1 Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

1 Can you think of any companies that started small?
2 Why do you think such companies became successful? Good products? Great leadership? Other ideas?

2 A Read the programme information. What kind of company is soleRebels? Has it been successful?

BBC News: soleRebels

When Ethiopian Bethlehem Tilahun Alemu started her business, she knew she wanted to use local **talent** and help offer **opportunities** to the **unemployed** people living in her neighbourhood. She decided to start selling cool, colourful shoes, made of **recycled** materials, including car tyres, but even she didn't realise how successful it would be. Her company, soleRebels, quickly became Africa's fastest growing footwear brand and the first **fair trade** shoe company in the world. Bethlehem was named in a list of the World's 100 Most Powerful Women. BBC newsreader George Alagiah meets the **entrepreneur**.



B Match the words/phrases in bold in Exercise 2A with meanings 1–6.

1 without work
2 natural ability to do something well
3 a person who starts a business (or businesses) and hopes to make money
4 chances to do something
5 a business where fair prices are paid to the producers
6 materials or objects that are used again

DVD VIEW

3 A Watch the DVD. What do you think of the shoes made by soleRebels? Would you buy a pair? Why/ Why not?

B Complete the fact file for the company.

soleRebels fact file

1 soleRebels makes shoes using old _____ and homespun cotton.
2 When the company started there were just _____ workers.
3 soleRebels shoes can be _____ all around the world.
4 soleRebels pays workers _____ times the average wage for the area.
5 The company has stores in Taiwan, Japan, Sweden and Austria and is planning to open in _____ also.
6 The company has helped to reduce the number of people living in _____.

C Watch the DVD again to check your answers.

4 Look at the expressions in bold that the newsreader uses and answer the questions.

1 '… an **ancient skill**, but they're using it in a modern way.'
Is the skill they are using old or new?
2 'Private sector companies are breathing new life into Ethiopia's once **faltering economy**.'
Do you think a 'faltering economy' is weak or strong?
3 'The finished product is a rather **funky** shoe.'
Are the shoes fashionable or not?
4 'That is a **win-win**.'
Do you think this is a situation that is good for everyone?

5 Work in pairs. Discuss. Why do you think Bethlehem's business idea was so successful?

https://polcet.edu.vn

speakout a money-making idea

6 A 8.6 **Listen to someone talking about a small business idea. Underline the correct alternatives to complete the summary.**

Ragbags will make different types of [1]*bags/clothes* out of recycled [2]*newspapers/material*. It plans to make the bags and sell them at [3]*markets/parties*, in local shops and on the internet. It [4]*needs/doesn't need* a lot of money to start the business, but it does need a beautiful [5]*website/workshop*.

B Listen again. How does the speaker finish the key phrases? Choose the correct ending (1–6) for each key phrase.

KEYPHRASES

Our business is called …
Our idea is to …
We hope to make money by … *1*
To be successful, we need to …
We plan to …
The best thing about the company is …

1 re-using old material and turning it into different types of bags.
2 *Ragbags*.
3 that you will have an amazing bag, and we'll have fun making them too.
4 make beautiful bags … out of recycled material.
5 make sure the bags are really good quality and look wonderful.
6 sell *Ragbags* at markets, in local shops and also online.

7 A Work in groups. Choose a hobby/interest you have and think about how you could make money from it. Answer the questions.

1 What is the name of the business?
2 What is the product/idea?
3 How will the business make money?
4 Who will you sell to?
5 What will you need to start/be successful?

B Prepare to present your ideas to the class. First practise your presentation. Use the notes in Exercise 7A to help you practise.

C Take turns to present your ideas to the class. Which group has the best idea? Which idea do you think could be the most successful? Why?

writeback a website entry

8 A Read an advertisement for a competition and one of the entries. What is different about the business idea?

Newsfeed Sharing Timezone

Calling all entrepreneurs

If you have a good business idea, and would like some help or investment from us, write and tell us about it. The winner of the 'Entrepreneur of the Year Award' will be given up to €10,000 to help start their business.

We plan to open a clothes shop called 'One World'. Our idea is to import handmade clothes from India and sell them in shops and on the internet. Our business will be different because we will pay fair prices to the people making the clothes in their own country. We need €10,000 to open the shop and build the website.

B Write an entry for the competition. Explain what your idea is, how it is different from other ideas and what you would do with the money. Use the model above to help you.



https://polcet.edu.vn

8.5 LOOKBACK

V MONEY

1 A **Complete the poem.**

Brenda Bones was poor and thin
Until her famous lottery win.
She won a million, paid her [1]b_ _ _ _,
Bought a big house in the hills,
Told her friends it's time to rest,
But decided to [2]in_ _ _ _
In a super-size hot air balloon
And flew from Crete to Cameroon
Forgetting the money she gave or [3]l_ _t,
Till every penny of her win was spent.
Then one sad day the balloon crashed
And Brenda Bones ran out of [4]c_ _ _.
She [5]borr_ _ed [6]c_ _ ns and took a train
And walked till she was home again.
She had no money, had no car.
She found a job in a little bar
And told long stories about her trips
And all the customers gave her [7]t_ _ _.
It took her years to finally learn it
But money's better when you [8]e_ _ _ it!

B **Work in pairs and compare your answers. Then read the poem aloud.**

G RELATIVE CLAUSES

2 A **Complete the sentences with *that*, *where* or *who*.**

1 Monday is the day of the week *that* I like best.
2 Pasta is the food I eat most often.
3 My mother is the person has helped me the most.
4 The town I grew up is really beautiful.
5 My brother and sister are the only people understand me.
6 The restaurant I usually have lunch is expensive.

B **Make the sentences true for you.**

C **Work in pairs and compare your ideas.**

A: *Sunday is the day of the week that I like best.*
B: *Really? Why?*
A: *Because I can relax.*

G *TOO MUCH/MANY, ENOUGH, VERY*

3 **Look at the pictures. What's the problem in each situation? Make as many sentences as you can using *too*, *very*, (*not*) *enough*, or *too much/many*.**



V MULTI-WORD VERBS

4 **Work in pairs and take turns. Ask the questions and complete the responses using the correct multi-word verb.**

1 **A:** Are you still trying to become a film star?
B: No. I gave up acting.
2 **A:** How was your dream holiday?
B: It _____ _____ a nightmare: I lost my wallet and then I got sick!
3 **A:** Do you still have her book?
B: No. I _____ it _____.
4 **A:** Do you still have all those guitars in your living room?
B: No. They _____ _____ too much space.
5 **A:** Did you accept the job offer?
B: No. I _____ it _____.
6 **A:** Did he join another company?
B: No, he _____ _____ this one!

F BUYING THINGS

5 A **Put the words in the correct order to make conversations.**

Conversation 1
A: I / you / help / can ?
B: looking / just / I'm

Conversation 2
A: I / help / can ?
B: tools / you / gardening / do / sell ?
A: just / I'll / check

Conversation 3
A: you / particular / looking / are / anything / in / for ?
B: you / these / do / red / have / of / in / one ?

Conversation 4
A: it / is / how ?
B: doesn't / it / fit
have / do / in / size / bigger / one / you / a / of / these ?
A: look / I'll / a / have
you / here / are
B: Thanks.
OK / fits / it

Conversation 5
A: next / who's ? are / or / credit / paying by / you / card / cash ?
B: card / credit / please
A: here / just / you / please / can / sign ?

Conversation 6
A: me / excuse
this / try / can / I / on ?
B: certainly / sir / yes
A: room / where's / fitting / the ?
B: left / it's / the / on

B **Work in pairs. Practise the conversations.**

https://polcet.edu.vn

9 nature



GREEN LIVING p88



INTO THE WILD p90



IT COULD BE BECAUSE … p92



THE NORTHERN LIGHTS p94

SPEAKING **9.1** Talk about green issues **9.2** Give your views on life in the city or the country **9.3** Talk about different animals **9.4** Talk about places of natural beauty

LISTENING **9.1** Listen to a radio programme about green ideas **9.4** Watch an extract from a BBC documentary about the Northern Lights

READING **9.2** Understand an article about an experience in the wild

WRITING **9.1** Write about your views on the environment **9.4** Write a travel blog

BBC

INTERVIEWS

How do you feel about being in the countryside?



https://polcet.edu.vn

9.1 GREEN LIVING

G comparatives/superlatives
P stressed syllables
V nature

VOCABULARY

NATURE

1 A Work in pairs. Discuss. Have you ever:

- swum in an ocean, a river or a lake?
- walked in a desert or a rainforest?
- climbed a mountain?

B Work in pairs. Think of an example for each thing in the box.

mountain range	lake	waterfall	
river	desert	ocean	rainforest

a mountain range – The Andes

C Work in pairs. Can you think of cities that have access to each of these natural features?

In Sydney you can swim in the Pacific Ocean.

▷ page 158 **PHOTOBANK**

LISTENING

2 A Look at photos A–C. What do you think is happening?

B 9.1 Listen to the programme to find out.

C The programme talks about three green ideas. What are they?

3 A Read the summary below. Can you find four mistakes?

Great green ideas

Hug it Forward is a project which uses plastic boxes to build schools in developing countries. Children and adults work together to build schools using bottles filled with inorganic trash.

Club Surya is an eco-nightclub in Tokyo. It has a special dance floor which uses the people dancing to produce electricity. The club produces 100 percent of its electricity like this. Also, if you walk to the club, you can get in free.

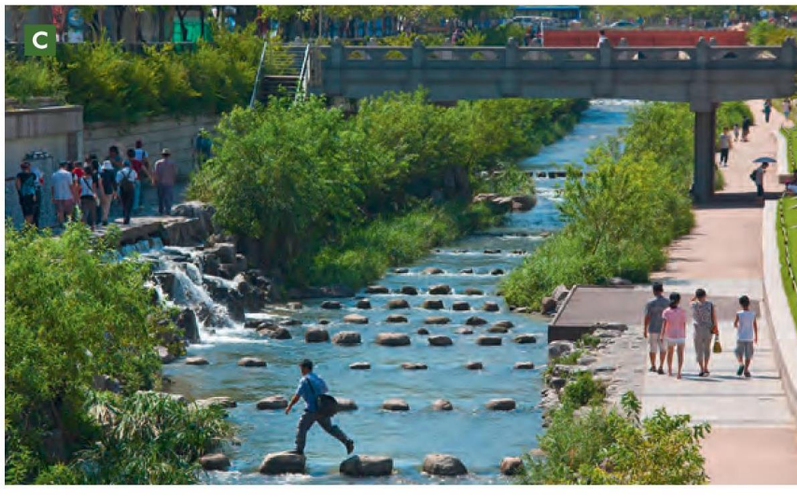
The Seoul River Park was created by Dr Kee Hwang. His idea was to take down one of the main shopping centres in Seoul and uncover the river that was below. He made the area into a green park in the city centre.

B Listen again to check your ideas.

C Work in groups. What do you think of the ideas? Which one do you like best? Why? Do you know of any similar ideas to these?







https://polcet.edu.vn

GRAMMAR

COMPARATIVES/SUPERLATIVES

4 A Read sentences 1–5 and complete the rule.

1 The area was a lot clean**er** too.
2 People are happ**ier than** before.
3 It gets **more** difficult to find green spaces in cities.
4 **More** communities are building their own schools.
5 There is **less** traffic chaos than before.

RULES

Use comparatives to compare two things, people or situations.
With short adjectives, add _____ or _____ to the end of the adjective (+ *than*)*.
With longer adjectives, use _____ + adjective.
We also use _____ / _____ + noun to compare things.

*For adjectives ending in *-y* (*happy*), the *-y* changes to an *-i* (*happier*).

B Read sentences a)–c) and complete the rule.

a) Seoul is one of **the largest** and **busiest** cities in the world.
b) **The most difficult** thing was filling the bottles.
c) **The least important** problem is …

RULES

Use *the* + superlative to say which is the biggest, the best, etc. in a group.
With short adjectives, use *the* and add _____ to the end of the adjective.*
With longer adjectives, use *the* + _____ / *least* + adjective.

*For adjectives ending in *-y* (*happy*), the *-y* changes to an *-i* (*happiest*).

▷ page 144 **LANGUAGEBANK**

5 A Complete the table.

adjective	comparative	superlative
long	*longer*	*the longest*
high	_____	_____
healthy	_____	_____
difficult	_____	_____

B 9.2 Listen and check your answers.

C 9.3 **STRESSED SYLLABLES** Listen and repeat. Underline the stressed syllables.

1 It's the most beautiful place I've ever been to.
2 It's hotter than I expected.
3 The food is cheaper than at home.
4 It's more dangerous than I thought.

6 A Complete the questions. Use the comparative or superlative form of the adjective in brackets.

1 What is _____ part of your town? (green)
2 Is your country _____ it used to be? (warm)
3 Where is _____ place you have been to? (nice)
4 Do you think living by the coast is _____ living in the city? Why/Why not? (healthy)
5 What's _____ away from home you've been? (far)
6 Is your country _____ other countries near it? (big)
7 Are people who live by the sea _____ people who live in the city? Why/Why not? (friendly)
8 What is _____ place you have been to? (polluted)

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.

SPEAKING

7 A Work in pairs. Read *The eco survey*. What can you do to protect the environment? Write two more questions.

THE ECO SURVEY

1 Do you recycle? Why/Why not?
2 Do you usually walk or take the car?
3 Do you grow your own food?
4 Do you think nuclear energy is a good or a bad idea?
5 _____
6 _____

B Work in groups. Ask and answer the questions. Who is the 'greenest' person in your class? Why?

WRITING

SIMILAR SOUNDING WORDS

8 A Underline the correct alternative.

1 Is this *you're/your* umbrella?
2 What are you going to *where/wear* today?
3 I bought *too/two/to* tickets for the concert.
4 I'm going to *write/right* an article about it.
5 I can't *sea/see* why it's so difficult.
6 I can't help. It's *there/their/they're* problem.

B Find and correct six spelling mistakes.

I think everyone should recycle. I've done this since I was a child and it's not difficult. Children need to be educated about the write way to look after the world we live in. I use a bicycle to get to work every day, and I get very angry when I sea people use a car to drive round the corner to the shops. Their are lots of small things we can do to help the environment like turning off the television when your not watching it, using plastic bags for you're rubbish, and recycling, two.

C Choose one of the topics in Exercise 7A and write your own comment.

https://polcet.edu.vn

9.2 INTO THE WILD

G articles
P word stress, weak forms: *a* and *the*
V the outdoors

VOCABULARY

THE OUTDOORS

1 Work in groups. Discuss the questions.

1 Do you like wild places?
2 Have you ever slept outdoors or been out in the wild?
3 Which wild places would you like to visit?

2 A Work in pairs and read sentences 1–8. What do you think the words in bold mean?

1 I'd like to live in a **rural area** when I'm older; it's nicer than the city.
2 The north of my country is an area of **natural beauty**; tourists often visit it.
3 Where I live there is a lot of **beautiful scenery**; it's good for walking.
4 I went camping in a **national park**; it was very quiet and peaceful.
5 We visited the **wildlife centre**; there were lots of unusual birds.
6 I'd like to visit a **tropical rainforest** and see the trees and insects.
7 My country has interesting **geographical features**, like volcanoes and forests.
8 I like being out in the **fresh air**; it's nice to be out of the city.

B Discuss. Which sentences are true for you?

C 9.4 **WORD STRESS** Listen and underline the stressed parts of the words in bold.

rural area

D Listen and repeat the sentences.

READING

3 A Look at the picture and the title of the story. What do you think happened?

B Read the text to find out.

4 Answer the questions.

1 Where was the writer travelling?
2 What did she plan to do?
3 What did she particularly enjoy about the trip?
4 Why did the tribe want to hold a ceremony?
5 How did she feel when she first saw the snake?
6 What happened at the end of the story?

5 A Work in pairs. Look at words/phrases 1–6. What do you think they mean? Use a dictionary to check your ideas.

1 howling
2 hot and humid
3 a clearing
4 staring
5 froze with fear
6 sink into the ground

B Use the picture and words above to retell the story.



anaconda!

Anthropology student Marisa Evangelou talks about how she came face to face with an anaconda in the jungle in Peru.

I was travelling in the Amazon in Peru and my plan was to spend some time with one of the tribes there. They live in simple huts deep in the jungle, and I travelled with a guide on a small boat for hours to get there. As we travelled, the sounds of the jungle grew louder and louder. I could hear monkeys **howling** and laughing, and the songs of tropical birds. It was **hot and humid**, and I was covered in mosquitoes.

The days I spent with the tribe were some of the most wonderful days of my life. We spoke very little, but I helped the women prepare meals, played with the children, and learnt about the plants they use for medicine. On my last day, one of the men called to me to follow. He spoke a little Spanish and told me the medicine man wanted to thank me for my stay and welcome me into their tribe. They planned a ceremony for me but I would need to choose between life and death. Was I happy to do that?

I agreed and followed my new friend into **a clearing** in the trees. He asked me to shut my eyes. I could hear feet approaching me. 'Are you ready?' he asked. I knew that my answer would probably change my life. 'Yes,' I whispered, with my eyes still closed. Soon I felt a heavy weight on my shoulders. I slowly opened my eyes to find a huge anaconda snake **staring** me in the face. I **froze with fear**, and the snake moved her head closer to my neck.

I knew that with one move she could kill me, and to make things worse my 'friend' smiled and told me the snake was very hungry. 'Breathe,' he said, 'make her your friend'. I didn't have a lot of choice, so I took a deep breath and tried not to scream. I could feel my feet **sink into the ground**. I breathed again, and slowly a strange thing started to happen. The snake lowered her head and rested it on my arm. I had passed the test.

https://potcet.edu.vn

GRAMMAR

ARTICLES

6 Read the rules and put examples 1–6 in the correct place.

1 with **a guide**
2 **a** huge anaconda **snake**
3 **The snake** was very hungry
4 in **the Amazon** in Peru
5 **tropical birds**
6 in **Peru**

RULES

1 Use *a/an* before singular nouns: *I travelled on* ***a boat***.
Use *a/an* the first time we mention the thing/person: a) _____
Use *a/an* before job titles (in general): b) _____
2 Use *the* before nouns when there's only one: *the Moon*
Use *the* before the names of some places: c) _____
Use *the* if we have already mentioned the thing/person (the listener knows which one): d) _____
Use *the* in some phrases with prepositions: *on the first day, in the wild, on the left*
3 Use no article before most cities, countries and continents: *I was on a trip in Argentina.* e) _____
Use no article before plural nouns: *covered in mosquitoes*
Use no article to talk about general types or groups of things: f) _____
Use no article in some phrases with prepositions: *for lunch, for months, on one occasion, at night, in class*

▷ page 144 LANGUAGEBANK

7 A Find and correct the mistakes below. There is one mistake in each sentence.

1 I always wanted to be a presenter of nature programmes.
2 I was one of many tourists in the South America.
3 A guide met us at the airport. The next day, same guide took us hunting.
4 On second day, the guide took us to a river.
5 I sometimes make a programmes in Britain.
6 In my job, I can explain natural world to millions of people.
7 I hate the insects in general, but especially mosquitoes.
8 I had camera in my bag.

B 9.5 **WEAK FORMS: *a* and *the*** Listen to check your answers. Notice how *a* is pronounced /ə/ and *the* is pronounced /ðə/ or /ðiː/.

C 9.6 Listen and write the sentences you hear.

8 Complete the text with *a, the* or – (no article).

When I was ten, my father took me camping for the first time in [1]_____ Michigan, USA. He wanted to teach me about wild animals, insects and trees.

We enjoyed the first two days together walking and fishing. Then [2]_____ my uncles came with [3]_____ bows and arrows to go hunting.

One evening we were sitting by the fire when [4]_____ bird flew over us. Immediately my uncles jumped up and fired their arrows at [5]_____ bird. All of them missed. But suddenly the arrows were flying down at us from [6]_____ sky. There were arrows everywhere – they looked like rain! We ran to escape them and fortunately no one was injured.

That day I didn't learn anything about [7]_____ animals or insects or trees, but I learnt [8]_____ great lesson about gravity!



SPEAKING

9 A Work in pairs. Read two comments about country life and city life. Which is closer to your opinion?

I can't stand the countryside or wild places. There are too many flies and animals that either want to eat you or your food. Even worse: there are no cinemas, no supermarkets, and you can't get a good coffee!

I get out of the city whenever I can. I love the peace and quiet of the countryside, and the people are much nicer there. I love the wild: animals, trees, mountains, forests – these are the best things in life.

B Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of living in a rural area and a city in your country.

C Work in pairs. Explain where you prefer to live and why.

https://polcet.edu.vn

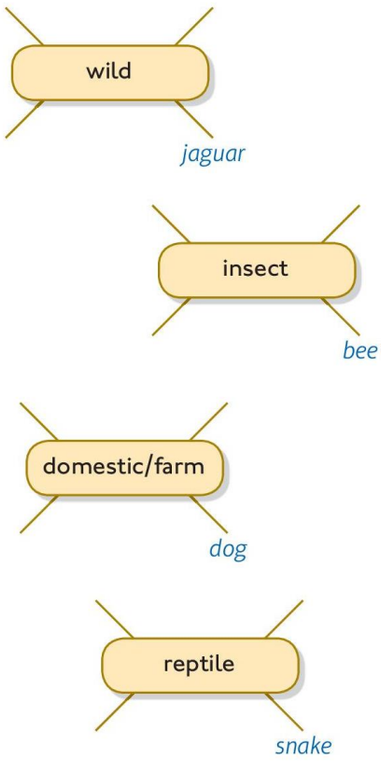
9.3 IT COULD BE BECAUSE …

F making guesses
P silent letters
V animals

VOCABULARY

ANIMALS

1 A Work in pairs. Look at the word webs. How many animals can you add to each category?



B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: say a letter. Student B: say an animal that begins with it.

▷ page 159 **PHOTOBANK**

speakout TIP

Get a study buddy. *Buddy* = 'friend' in US English. Review vocabulary and take turns to test each other.

LISTENING

2 Discuss the questions below with other students.

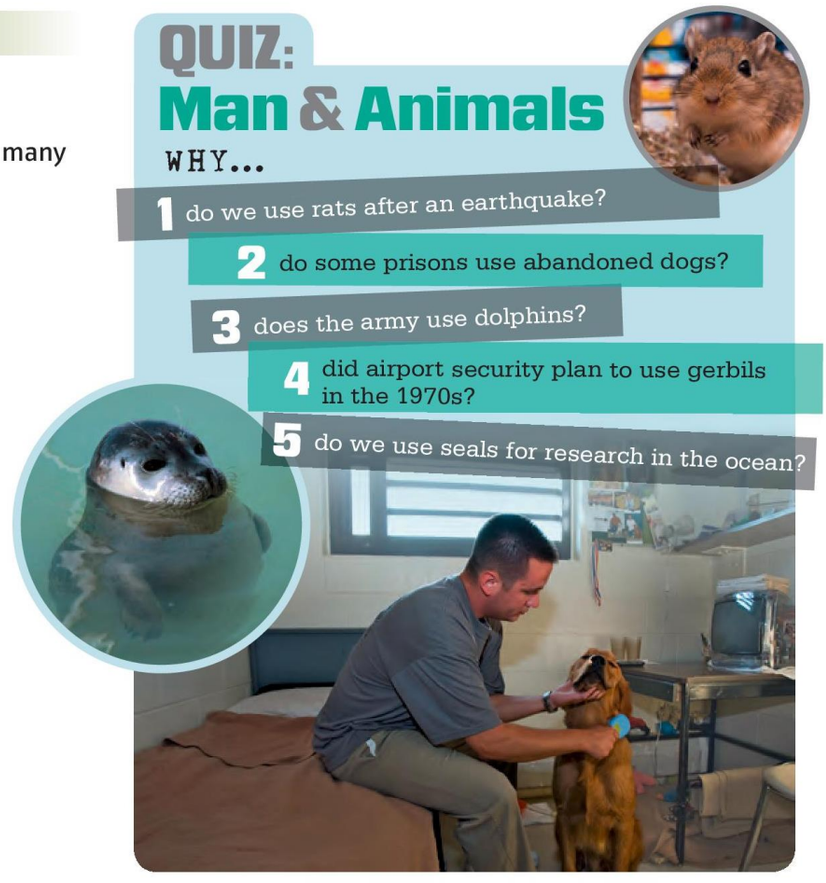
1 What can humans do better than animals?
2 What can animals do better than humans?

3 A Work in pairs and do the quiz.

B Compare your answers with other students.

4 A 9.7 Listen to two people discussing the questions in the quiz. As you listen, make a note of the correct answers.

B Listen again to check.



FUNCTION

MAKING GUESSES

5 A Read the sentences from the recording. Complete the table with the phrases in bold.

1 **It could be** as prison guards.
2 **It might be** because they can live in very cold temperatures.
3 **It can't be** that, because they'd be trained dogs.
4 **Maybe** they use the dogs to guard the prisoners.
5 **Perhaps** they can smell drugs.
6 **It's definitely not** to attack people.

It's possible	It's not possible

B Which 'silent letters' are not pronounced in *could* and *might*?

C 9.8 **SILENT LETTERS** Listen and repeat.

D Now say the phrases below quickly.

1 It could … It could be … It could be today.
2 It might … It might be … It might be the best.
3 It can't … It can't be … It can't be you!

▷ page 144 **LANGUAGEBANK**

https://polcet.edu.vn

6 A **Underline the correct alternative.**

1 What's the world's biggest fish?
It *could be/can't be* a whale because whales aren't fish.
2 What's the world's fastest bird?
It *is definitely not/might be* a penguin. They can't fly.
3 What is the largest bird?
It can't be/Maybe it's an ostrich because they are often taller than humans.
4 What's the longest land animal?
Perhaps it's/It can't be a crocodile because some snakes are much longer.
5 What's the world's fastest land animal?
Maybe it's/It can't be a cheetah because they can run at 100 km/h.
6 Which animal causes the most deaths?
It could be/It's definitely not a shark because they only kill a few people every year.
7 Which animal has the largest brain?
It can't be/Perhaps it's a whale because they are very large and intelligent.
8 Which animal lives the longest?
It *can't be/might be* a tortoise because they can live to 150 years old.

B **Work in pairs. Do you know the answers to questions 1–8? Check on page 164.**

LEARN TO

GIVE YOURSELF TIME TO THINK

7 **Look at the extracts from audio script 9.7. The phrases in bold give the speaker time to think. Complete the phrases by adding a word in each space.**

1 Why do we use rats after an earthquake? **I'm not** _____.
2 Why do some prisons use abandoned dogs? **Let me** _____.
3 It's definitely not to attack people because dolphins are kind of nice. **It's hard to** _____.
4 Why do we use seals for research in the ocean? _____ **a good question.**

8 A **Find and correct the mistakes in each conversation.**

1 **A:** The world's fastest animal? Er, let me to think.
B: Well, I'm not much sure, but I think it's the cheetah.
2 **A:** The animal that lives the longest? Um, that's good question.
B: It's hard say, but it could be the tortoise.

B **Work in pairs and practise the conversations.**

SPEAKING

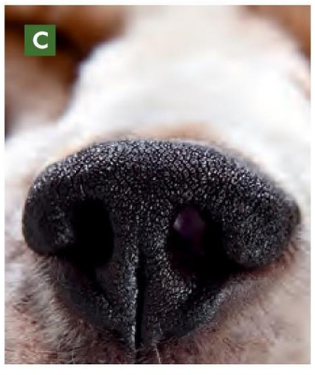
9 A **Look at photos A–G below. Which animal/animal parts are shown? Why do you think the parts are special?**

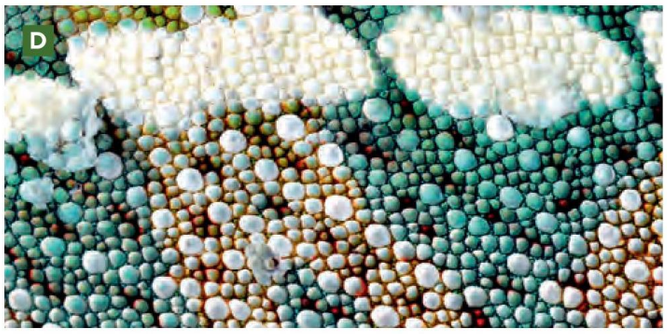
A: *What do you think A is?*
B: *I don't know. It could be …*

B **Compare your ideas with other students. Check your answers on page 164.**















https://polcet.edu.vn

9.4 THE NORTHERN LIGHTS

DVD PREVIEW

1 A Work in groups. Discuss the questions.

1 What part of the world do you think the picture shows?
2 Why do you think some people like going to places like this?

B Read the programme information. Why do you think Joanna Lumley wants to visit the Northern Lights?

Joanna Lumley In the Land of the Northern Lights

Actress Joanna Lumley grew up in hot Malaysia. During her childhood she dreamed of being somewhere cold, and of seeing the amazing Northern Lights of Norway. Many years later she got the chance. This BBC documentary programme follows her journey. She travels by plane, boat, train, sled and car to get to the far north, where she hopes her dream will come true. Will she see the lights?



DVD VIEW

2 A Watch the DVD. What do you learn about Joanna Lumley?

B Read sentences 1–5. Which word from the box completes each sentence?

lights	books	dogs	people	snow

1 As a child, Joanna never saw _____.
2 She feels as if she's in another world because there are no _____.
3 She brings essential things, for example, _____.
4 After the train journey she meets a guide and his _____.
5 At night, she goes to see the _____.

3 A Read sentences a)–f). Match the words in bold to words in the box below with a similar meaning.

amazing	difficult to find	necessary
not definitely good or bad	~~hot and wet climate~~	
happy to wait (maybe for a long time)		

a) 'As a little girl I lived in the steamy heat of **tropical** Malaysia.' *hot and wet climate–1*
b) 'The weather near Tromsø is **uncertain**.'
c) 'And if we're lucky we might see the **elusive** Northern Lights.'
d) 'This is the most **astonishing** thing I have ever, ever seen.'
e) 'I pack up things that are going to be **essential** on every trip.'
f) 'You just have to be **patient**.'

B Watch the DVD again and number the sentences in the order you hear them.

4 Work in pairs and discuss the questions.

1 Would you like to do what Joanna Lumley did?
2 Is there anywhere you have wanted to visit 'all your life'? Where? Why?

https://polcet.edu.vn

speakout an amazing place

5 A 9.9 Listen to a woman talking about a natural place she visited and answer the questions.

1 Where is the place?
2 What is special about it?

B Listen again and tick the key phrases you hear.

KEYPHRASES

What did you think of it?
It was [amazing / frightening / wonderful] …!
The first thing you notice is [how big it is / how quiet the place is] …
How did you get there?
The best thing about it was … [the silence / how beautiful the place was] …
How long did the journey take?
The journey took [two hours / two weeks] …
Would you like to go back?

6 Answer the questions.

1 What's the highest place you've ever been to?
2 What's the wildest place you've ever been to?
3 What's the most beautiful place you've ever been to?
4 What's the longest walk you've ever done?
5 What's the coldest place you've visited?
6 What's the hottest place you've visited?

7 A Work in pairs. Choose two or three of the questions to discuss and compare your answers. Use the key phrases to talk about your experiences.

B Work with other students and tell them about your experiences. Decide which places are the most interesting, the most exciting and the most relaxing.

C Tell the class about your partner's experiences.

writeback a travel blog

8 A Read the travel blog. Which country did Lia visit? Did she enjoy the experience? Why/Why not?

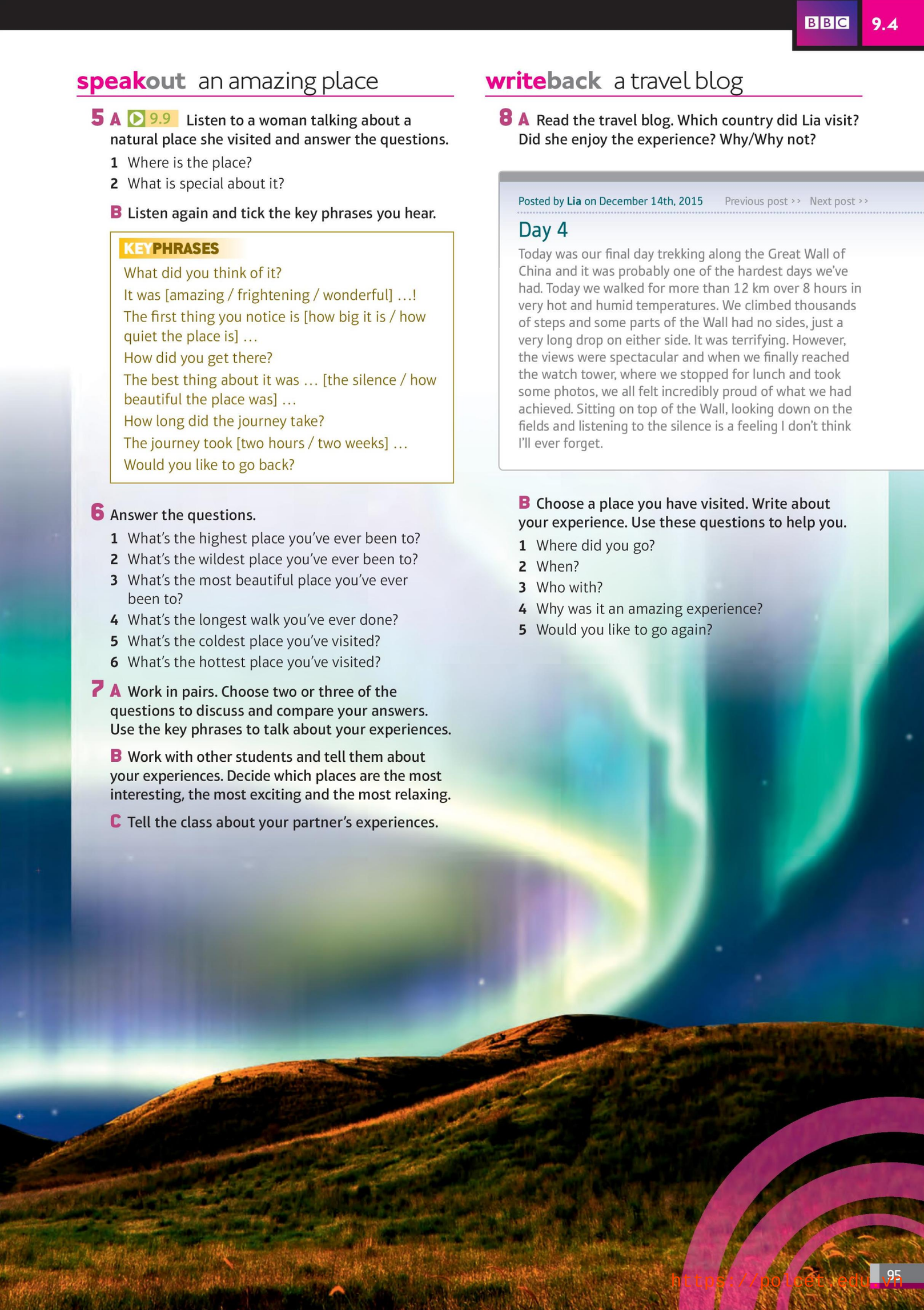
Posted by **Lia** on December 14th, 2015 Previous post >> Next post >>

Day 4

Today was our final day trekking along the Great Wall of China and it was probably one of the hardest days we've had. Today we walked for more than 12 km over 8 hours in very hot and humid temperatures. We climbed thousands of steps and some parts of the Wall had no sides, just a very long drop on either side. It was terrifying. However, the views were spectacular and when we finally reached the watch tower, where we stopped for lunch and took some photos, we all felt incredibly proud of what we had achieved. Sitting on top of the Wall, looking down on the fields and listening to the silence is a feeling I don't think I'll ever forget.

B Choose a place you have visited. Write about your experience. Use these questions to help you.

1 Where did you go?
2 When?
3 Who with?
4 Why was it an amazing experience?
5 Would you like to go again?



https://poloet.edu.vn

9.5 LOOKBACK

NATURE

1 A Do the geography quiz.

THE GEOGRAPHY QUIZ

① **Which mountains are higher?**
a) the Andes **b)** the Rockies

② **Which country has a longer coastline?**
a) Russia b) Canada

③ **Which lake is larger?**
a) Lake Toba b) Lake Michigan

④ **Which river is shorter?**
a) the Amazon b) the Nile

⑤ **Which is the deepest ocean?**
a) the Pacific b) the Atlantic

⑥ **Which is the highest waterfall?**
a) Niagara Falls b) Angel Falls



B Work in pairs and compare your answers. Then check your answers on page 164.

COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

2 A What are the comparative/superlative forms of the adjectives in the box?

hot	good	lovely	cheap
high	boring	healthy	long
exciting	fast	old	cold

B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: say an adjective. Student B: say the comparative and superlative form.

A: *big*
B: *bigger, the biggest*

B: *expensive*
A: *more expensive, the most expensive*

3 A Complete the questions with the correct form of the adjective in brackets.

1 Who is _____ student in the class? (organised)
2 Who studies _____? (hard)
3 Who has _____ hair? (long)
4 Who is _____? (young)
5 Who is _____? (tall)
6 Who has read _____ books this month? (most)
7 Who drives _____ car? (fast)
8 Who lives _____ from the school? (far)

B Work in groups and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.

ARTICLES

4 Add *a/an/the* or – (zero article) to the sentences where necessary.

1 Excuse me, where's nearest bank?
2 This city is big, but it doesn't have airport.
3 Cigarettes are bad for you.
4 Hi. Would you like drink?
5 Where's money I lent you?
6 I love ice cream. It's my favourite food.
7 She goes to small school in the centre of London.
8 We missed the bus and waited an hour for next one.
9 My sister is working in United States at the moment.
10 Is there internet café near here?

5 Underline the correct alternative to complete the sentences.

1 I want to be a vet because I like *the animals/an animals/animals*.
2 She looked up and saw an eagle in *the sky/a sky/sky*.
3 He graduated and became *the journalist/a journalist/journalist*.
4 A lion attacked us. Immediately, Jan, our guide, shot *the lion/a lion/lion*.
5 They spent some time in *the Argentina/an Argentina/Argentina*.
6 We went on holiday, but it rained on *the first day/a first day/first day*.

ANIMALS

6 A Find the names of nine animals in the word square.

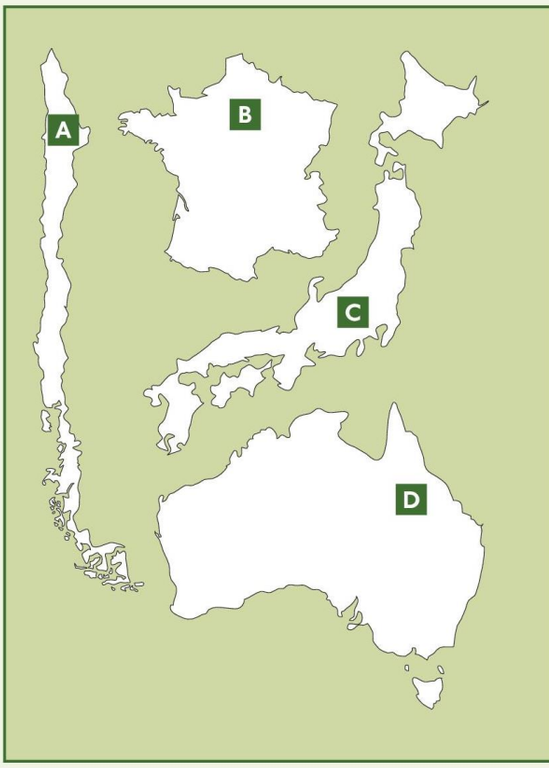
C	R	O	C	O	D	I	L	E	E
H	O	A	O	B	O	C	D	T	F
I	T	G	W	H	L	L	J	U	K
M	B	L	M	N	P	I	G	R	O
P	I	P	Q	R	H	S	T	T	U
A	T	V	W	W	I	X	Y	L	Z
N	A	B	H	S	N	A	K	E	C
Z	D	E	A	F	F	H	I	J	A
E	A	G	L	E	D	I	O	E	N
E	E	Y	E	L	I	P	M	S	O

B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: describe one of the animals in the word square. Student B: guess which animal it is.

MAKING GUESSES

7 A Work in pairs. Guess the countries. Use *could/might be* or *can't be*.

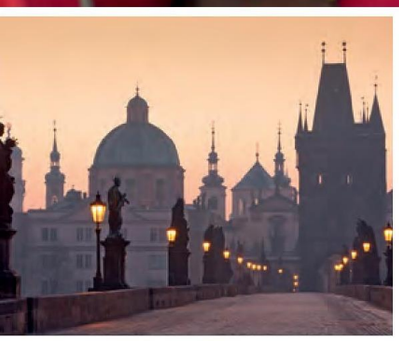
Picture A can't be …



B Check your answers on page 165.

https://polcet.edu.vn

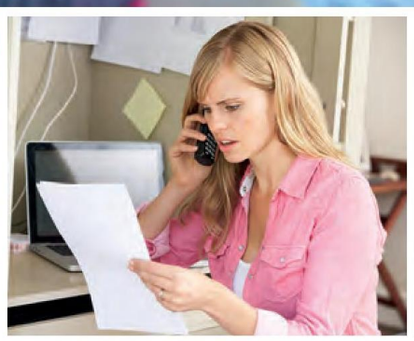
10 society



TOP CITIES p98



CRIME AND PUNISHMENT p100



THERE'S A PROBLEM p102



MARY'S MEALS p104

SPEAKING **10.1** Discuss qualities of different places **10.2** Decide on the punishments to fit the crimes **10.3** Talk about problems in a school **10.4** Talk about an important issue

LISTENING **10.1** Listen to conversations about different cities **10.4** Watch an extract from a BBC documentary about an internet sensation

READING **10.2** Read an article about crime and punishment

WRITING **10.1** Use formal expressions to write an email **10.4** Write about an issue

BBC

INTERVIEWS

How do you feel about city life?



https://polcet.edu.vn

10.1 TOP CITIES

G uses of *like*
P sentence stress
V describing a city

SPEAKING

1 A Work in pairs. Discuss. What do young people want in a city? Which do you think are the world's best cities for young people to live in? Why?

B Read the text. Which cities do you think will be on the list? Look at page 165 to find out.

Best cities for young people

The world's biggest and most important cities are not necessarily the best cities to live in, especially for young people. Many of them are really expensive, have traffic problems, poor public transport systems and high crime rates. Young people looking for somewhere to study or to live are carefree and want to explore new lifestyles. Have a look at our list of the top ten cities for young people to live in.


Dubai


Prague

VOCABULARY

DESCRIBING A CITY

2 A Read sentences 1–12 below. Are they positive (+) or negative (–)?

1 It has clean, safe streets.
2 The public transport system is terrible.
3 There's a lot of traffic.
4 It has beautiful buildings.
5 The people are friendly and polite.
6 There's a lot of crime.
7 It's very polluted.
8 There are nice parks and green spaces.
9 It has good shopping/nightlife.
10 There are lots of things to see and do.
11 It's expensive to live there.
12 It's very crowded.

B 10.1 **SENTENCE STRESS** Listen to the sentences. Underline the words or syllables which are stressed.

1 It has clean, safe streets.
2 The public transport system is terrible.

C Listen and repeat the sentences paying attention to the stressed words or syllables.

D Discuss. Which three factors are the most/least important for you?

LISTENING

3 A 10.2 Listen to the conversations and look at the photos. Which city does each speaker talk about? What do they think about it?

B Listen again. Which city has these things?

1 free trams *Melbourne*
2 beautiful buildings and squares
3 lots of bars and clubs
4 cafés and street art
5 cheap taxis
6 a castle

4 Read audioscript 10.2 on page 174. Underline the phrases from Exercise 2 which the speakers use to describe the cities.

https://polcet.edu.vn


Melbourne

GRAMMAR

USES OF *LIKE*

5 A Match questions 1–5 with answers a)–e).

1 What's Prague like?
2 What's the weather like?
3 Do you like living in Melbourne?
4 What's the public transport like?
5 And what do you like best about living in Melbourne?

a) I love it! Melbourne is a really great city.
b) It's a very beautiful city.
c) It's very cold in the winter.
d) I think it's probably the atmosphere.
e) Public transport is really good, actually.

B Match questions 1–5 above with the rules below.

RULES

1 Use *like* (verb) to talk about something you enjoy/think is nice. _____
2 Use *be like* to describe or give your opinion about something. *Question 1*

▷ page 146 **LANGUAGEBANK**

6 A Complete the conversations using questions with *like*.

1 **A:** I've never been to **Madrid**. What's _____?
B: It's a lovely city. There's a great atmosphere and the people are really friendly.
2 **A:** Do _____ living in **Moscow**?
B: I love it! It's one of the best cities in the world.
3 **A:** _____ your **new flat** _____?
B: It's very small, but it's near the city centre.
4 **A:** What _____ best about living in **Rome**?
B: The food. I love Italian food!

B 10.3 Listen to check. Then listen again and repeat the questions.

C Rewrite the questions by changing or removing the words in bold.

D Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.

A: *I've never been to Torun. What's it like?*
B: *It's a small city, so there isn't a lot of traffic.*

SPEAKING

7 A Choose two cities you know well. Write down three positive things and one negative thing for each city.

B Work in groups and take turns. Describe the cities and say why you like/don't like them. Which of the cities should be in the top ten places to live? Why?

WRITING

USING FORMAL EXPRESSIONS

8 A Read the email. Why is Kristina writing? What information does she want to know?

Dear Sir/Madam,

I am writing to ask for some more information about your Bed and Breakfast. I am planning to stay in Malta for one month to study English and I am interested in booking a room. However, before I do that, I would like to check some information. Firstly, is it possible to travel easily into the centre of town by public transport? How much does it cost? Secondly, my course finishes in the evening, so I would need to walk home alone. Are the streets around the area where you are located safe at night? Finally, as I plan to stay for the whole month, I would like to know if it is possible to have a discount on the price. I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

Kristina Paoli

B Is the language in the email formal or informal? How can you tell?

C Find formal expressions in the email which have similar meanings to the informal expressions in the table below.

informal	formal
Hi …	*Dear*
This is just a quick note to say …	
I want to … I want to know if … Can I ….	
Speak to you soon.	
Best wishes	

D Imagine you are going to spend a month in another city studying English. Where would you go? You need some information. Write a formal email to the school. Include these things:

- the reason for your letter
- a question about the language course
- a question about the accommodation
- a request for information about the city

https://polcet.edu.vn

10.2 CRIME AND PUNISHMENT

G present/past passive
P weak forms: *was/were*
V crime and punishment









SPEAKING

1 A Match photos A–D with the crimes in the box.

graffiti	murder	drink driving
speeding		

B Discuss. Are any of these crimes a problem in your town/city?

READING

2 A Read the introduction to an article and answer the questions.

1 What did the man do wrong?
2 What was his punishment?
3 What is 'alternative sentencing'?

B Work in pairs. Discuss. What alternative punishments can you think of for the crimes in Exercise 1?

For graffiti, you should spend a month painting the walls of hospitals and libraries, etc., with no pay. For speeding, you should …

C Read the rest of the article. Does it mention any of your ideas?

D Work in pairs. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of the alternative sentencing programme.

Make the punishment

FIT THE CRIME

A man is caught stealing books from a bookshop. The judge asks why he did it, and the **thief** says he loves books. What is the man's punishment? A **prison sentence**? A big **fine**? No. The man is sent to read stories and books to hospital patients. He enjoys the job and continues to do it for many years!

Welcome to alternative sentencing programmes. Instead of traditional punishments, criminals get the punishments that fit their crimes.

What other examples of alternative sentencing are there? Two boys were caught **writing graffiti** on a wall. The normal punishment for this is a fine, but in this case the boys were told to do **community service**. They cleaned seventy walls in three weeks.

A **shoplifter** was caught **shoplifting** three times in one year in a small town in the United States. What was her punishment? She was sent to speak to shop owners. She gave advice on how to stop shoplifters. In one month she spoke to the owners of forty shops, and told them all about the techniques that shoplifters use. It was a great service to the community because after that, shoplifting almost disappeared from the town.

What about more serious crimes? Is alternative sentencing possible for crimes like **theft** or credit card **fraud**? It depends on many things. Who are the criminals? Are they young? Is this their first crime? Can they change their way of life? One recent story suggests it is possible.

A thief stole seventeen cans of paint. Instead of going to prison, he was told to spend several weeks painting local schools, a library, and other public buildings. He enjoyed the work, and now it's his job.

https://polcet.edu.vn

VOCABULARY

CRIME AND PUNISHMENT

3 A Match the words in bold from the text in Exercise 2 with definitions 1–9 below.

1 a person who steals things *thief*
2 time that is spent in prison
3 writing or drawing on public walls, doors, etc.
4 doing unpaid work to help your town/city
5 stealing things
6 a person who steals things from shops
7 cheating someone to make money from them
8 stealing things from a shop
9 an amount of money that you have to pay

B Put the words in the correct place in the table.

criminal	crime	punishment
thief		

speakout TIP

Sometimes words have the same stem, e.g. *shoplifter/shoplifting*. It is a good idea to write these words together. Write them in your vocabulary notebook.

▷ page 159 PHOTOBANK

GRAMMAR

PRESENT/PAST PASSIVE

4 A Complete the tables with the passive form.

present	
active	**passive**
The police **catch** a man stealing books from a bookshop.	A man _____ **caught** stealing books from a bookshop.

past	
active	**passive**
The judge **sent** the man to read stories.	The man _____ **sent** to read stories.

B Read the sentences in Exercise 4A again. Which sentences say who does the actions: the active or the passive? Complete the rule below.

RULES

Use the passive to talk about what happens to things/people when we don't know who/what caused the action (or it's not important).
Form the passive with: subject + verb _____ (in the present, past or other tense) + past participle.

C Find five more examples of the passive in the article.

5 A 10.4 **WEAK FORMS: *was/were*** How are *was* and *were* pronounced in the passive? Listen to the sentences below.

1 He was sent home.
2 It was eaten.
3 They were caught.
4 They were stopped.

B Listen again and repeat the sentences. Make sure you use a short, unstressed pronunciation for *was* /wəz/ and *were* /wə/.

▷ page 146 LANGUAGEBANK

6 A Make passive sentences with the prompts and the verbs in brackets. Use the present simple or the past simple.

1 When I was a child I / many stories (tell)
When I was a child, I was told many stories.
2 My real name is James, but I / Jim by my friends (call)
3 On my tenth birthday, I / to Disneyland (take)
4 These days, people in my company / a bonus every December (pay)
5 When I was younger, I / by many teachers (help)
6 On our first day, all the new students / around the school (show)
7 Even now, I / that I look like my mother (tell)
8 When we were young, all the children in my family / to become doctors (expect)

B Change four of the sentences so they are true for you. Use passives. Then work in pairs and compare your sentences.

My real name is Nicholas, but I am called Nico by my friends.

SPEAKING

7 A Work in pairs. Read about some crimes and think of alternative punishments.

1 Two boys were caught writing large graffiti on the wall of a private house.
2 A couple went sailing illegally in dangerous waters. A search team had to spend hours looking for them.
3 A man was arrested for playing loud music late at night for several days, ignoring his neighbours' requests to turn it down.
4 A girl was caught stealing eggs from a farm close to her home.

B Compare your ideas with other students' ideas. Which alternative sentences do you think (a) would work the best? (b) are the most imaginative?

C Turn to page 161 to find out what alternative sentences were given.

https://polcet.edu.vn

10.3 THERE'S A PROBLEM

F complaining
P sentence stress
V problems

VOCABULARY

PROBLEMS

1 A Work in pairs. Look at phrases 1–8 below. What do the words in bold mean? Which things can you see in photos A–E?

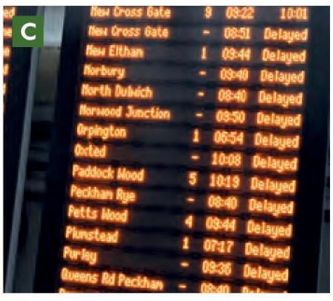
1 public transport **delays**
2 **litter** on the streets
3 bad **service** in a restaurant or shop
4 **faulty** equipment
5 someone speaking **loudly** on their phone
6 computers **crashing**
7 getting **stuck in a traffic jam**
8 receiving **spam** in your inbox

B Discuss. Which of the things in Exercise 1A annoy you the most? What other things annoy you (at home/at work/in shops, etc.)?

I can't stand people eating in the street.











FUNCTION

COMPLAINING

2 A 10.5 Listen to three people complaining and answer the questions.

1 Where are they?
2 What problems do they describe?

B Listen again and answer the questions.

Conversation 1
1 What does the receptionist offer to do?
2 Does she sound rude or polite?

Conversation 2
3 How long did the man wait for a table?
4 How long did he wait for his meal?
5 What reason did the manager give?

Conversation 3
6 How long has the woman waited?
7 Why is she surprised?

3 A Complete sentences 1–6 below with a suitable word from the box.

sorry	look	nothing	over	work	problem

1 There's a _____ with the air conditioning. *C*
2 It doesn't _____.
3 We'll _____ into it right away.
4 I'm really _____ about that.
5 I'm sorry, but there's _____ we can do at the moment.
6 I've been here for _____ an hour.

B Are the sentences complaints (C) or responses (R)?

C Read audio script 10.5 on pages 174–175 to check your answers.

▷ page 146 **LANGUAGEBANK**

4 Match complaints 1–4 with responses a)–d).

1 I bought this camera here last week, but there's a problem with it.
2 I had an appointment with Doctor Clarke at 3.00p.m., but I've been here for over two hours.
3 Excuse me, the lights in my room don't work.
4 We were told there's a flight delay of over six hours. Is this right?

a) I'm really sorry about that. He's very busy at the moment.
b) I'm sorry, but there's nothing we can do at the moment. There's a problem with the electricity.
c) I'm afraid that's right. The plane has a faulty engine.
d) OK, can you leave it here? I'll look into it right away.

https://polcet.edu.vn



E

LEARN TO

SOUND FIRM, BUT POLITE

5 A Read 1–3 below. In what situations could you use these expressions?

1 Could you help me?
2 I'm afraid I have a complaint.
3 Excuse me, could I speak to the manager?

speakout TIP

When we want to criticise or complain, we usually use a phrase to introduce the complaint. This helps the listener to prepare for what we are going to say. Is this the same in your language? How do you say the phrases in Exercise 5A in your language?

B 10.6 **SENTENCE STRESS** Listen to the pronunciation of the sentences. Underline the stressed words. Then listen and repeat.

Could you help me?

6 There are words missing from conversations 1–3. Complete the conversations with the words in the box.

could	into	doesn't	speak	ago	afraid	problem

Conversation 1

A: Excuse me, could I ___ to the manager?
B: Yes, one moment, please.
A: There's a ___ with the TV in my room. It ___ work.
C: OK, I'll send someone up to have a look at it.

Conversation 2

A: Excuse me, I ordered room service over an hour ___. Can you look ___ it, please?
B: Yes, of course.
A: Thank you.

Conversation 3

A: You help me? I'm I have a complaint.
B: What's the problem?
A: This soup is cold.
B: I'm sorry, sir. I'll take it back to the kitchen.

7 Work in pairs. Student A: turn to page 165. Student B: turn to page 166. Role-play the situations.

SPEAKING

8 A Read sentences 1–6 about the Noparlo School of English. Which problems are the most annoying?

1 Lessons are delayed because the teacher is always late.
2 The equipment in the Self-Access Centre is faulty.
3 The classrooms are full of litter.
4 Students use their phones in class.
5 The heating doesn't work and it is winter.
6 The school food is terrible.

B Work in pairs. Student A: you are a student at the Noparlo School of English. Turn to page 166. Student B: you are the director at the Noparlo School of English. Turn to page 161.



https://potcet.edu.vn

10.4 BBC MARY'S MEALS

DVD PREVIEW

1 Work in pairs. Discuss. Do children in your country get free school meals? What do you think of the food that they eat? How could it be improved?

2 A Read the programme information and answer the questions.

1 Why did Martha start her blog? What was the problem?
2 Why did she decide to raise money?

Mary's Meals

Martha Payne, from Argyll in Scotland, became **an internet sensation** when she started posting photos of her school meals on her blog NeverSeconds. Sometimes she wasn't happy with the meals that she was given and would give them a **score** out of ten. The local council **banned** her from taking photographs and posting them on the website, but Martha received support from around the world and soon was allowed to continue her blog. However, when she heard about how children in some parts of the world went to school hungry, she decided to use the blog to **raise money** for hungry children. She managed to raise over £100,000 to help feed school children in Malawi through a project called Mary's Meals. In this programme she visits the **charity** to see what they have done with the money.



B Match the words/phrases in bold in Exercise 2A with meanings 1–5.

1 collect money
2 an organisation that gives money or help to people who need it
3 not allowed to do something
4 someone who becomes famous quickly on the internet
5 a number of points

DVD VIEW

3 A Watch the DVD. What did the charity Mary's Meals do with the money that Martha Payne raised?

B In the story, what is the significance of the words and numbers in the box?

grow vegetables/raise sheep school dinners £100,000 100,000 people 2,000 children kitchen Hollywood

C Watch the DVD again to check your answers.

4 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

1 Do you think it was a good idea for Martha Payne to start a blog about her school meals? Why/Why not?
2 What do you think of the project Mary's Meals?
3 The presenter says, 'What an achievement for nine-year-old Martha Payne.' Do you agree/disagree? Why?



https://polcet.edu.vn

speakout an issue

5 A 10.7 **Listen to two people talking about issues that concern them. Tick the issues that they talk about.**

smoking	drugs/alcohol	crime	green issues	technology
activities for teenagers	traffic	buildings in your town/city	litter	
imported food	cost of living	fast food	public transport	

B What is the problem? Listen again and complete the summaries.

1 He doesn't think that countries should import [1]_____ from from around the world when they can [2]_____ it in their own country. He thinks that people should buy their food locally.

2 She thinks that there are not enough things for [3]_____ to do and this causes problems. She would like to see more [4]_____ and youth clubs.

C Read audio script 10.7 on page 175 to check. Underline the key phrases in the audio script.

KEYPHRASES

One thing that really annoys me …
I don't understand why [we need to/there's] …
I get really fed up with [the fact that/the way that] …
I just think [it's really difficult/it's unfair] …
And another thing is …
I think … should … / it should be …

6 A Work in pairs. Choose an issue you feel strongly about from the box in Exercise 5A (or choose another one). Answer the questions.

1 What is the problem?
2 Why is it a problem? What has caused it?
3 Why do you feel strongly about it?
4 What do you think you or other people could do to change the situation?

B Work in groups and take turns to talk about the problem. Do you agree/disagree with other people's ideas?

writeback a web comment

7 A Read the website comment below and answer the questions.

1 What is the problem?
2 How does the writer feel about the problem?
3 How do you feel about it?

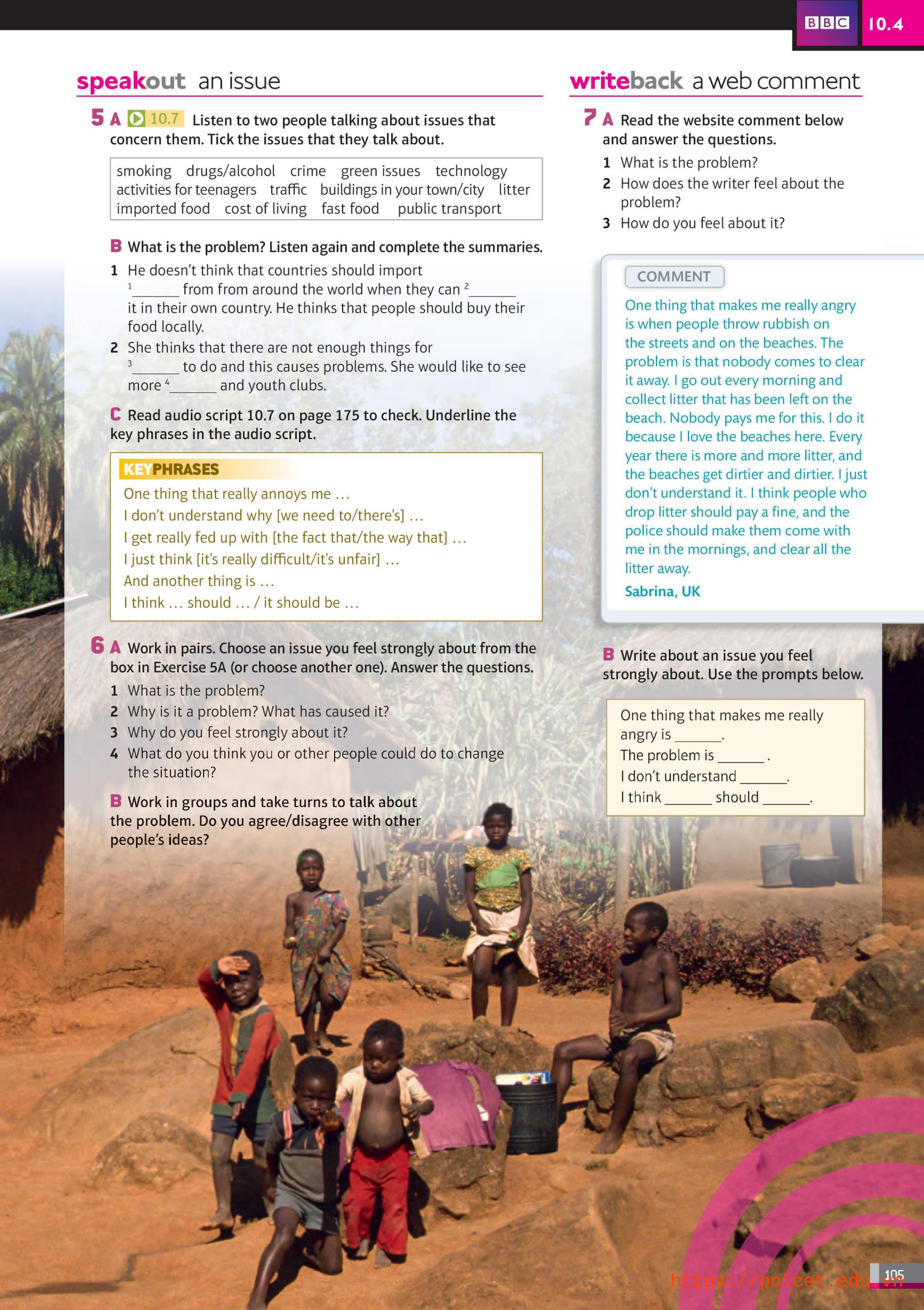
COMMENT

One thing that makes me really angry is when people throw rubbish on the streets and on the beaches. The problem is that nobody comes to clear it away. I go out every morning and collect litter that has been left on the beach. Nobody pays me for this. I do it because I love the beaches here. Every year there is more and more litter, and the beaches get dirtier and dirtier. I just don't understand it. I think people who drop litter should pay a fine, and the police should make them come with me in the mornings, and clear all the litter away.

Sabrina, UK

B Write about an issue you feel strongly about. Use the prompts below.

One thing that makes me really angry is _____.
The problem is _____ .
I don't understand _____.
I think _____ should _____.



https://polcet.edu.vn

10.5 LOOKBACK

V DESCRIBING A CITY

1 A Complete the phrases.

1 a lot of tr_ _ _ _ _
2 beautiful bu_ _ _ _ _ _ _
3 friendly, po_ _ _ _ people
4 a good public tr_ _ _ _ _ _ _ system
5 a lot of cr_ _ _
6 clean, safe st_ _ _ _ _
7 good ni_ _ _ _ _ _ _
8 it's ex_ _ _ _ _ _ _ to live there

B Work in pairs and take turns to describe a place you know. Use the phrases above to describe it.

G USES OF *LIKE*

2 A There is one extra word in questions 1–6 below. Find the word and cross it out.

1 What's do the weather like today?
2 What food do you to like most?
3 What's your capital city it like?
4 What do you like about where do you live?
5 What's about the food in your country like?
6 What like are the people like where you live?

B Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

V CRIME AND PUNISHMENT

3 Reorder the letters in the underlined words to complete the sentences.

1 He was given a ironps teennecs for committing the crime.
2 The graffiti artist had to do icymountm viceers.
3 The filterposh was caught in a shop.
4 Unfortunately fehtt is very common in my city.
5 Credit card dufar is a modern crime.
6 He received a nife for parking his car in the wrong place.
7 How did they catch the hefit?
8 She was found wingrit raigffti on a wall.

G PRESENT/PAST PASSIVE

4 A Match 1–6 with a)–f) to make sentences.

1 The television was
2 The American Constitution
3 Penicillin was discovered
4 The first aeroplanes
5 Surfing was first
6 The Statue of Liberty and the Eiffel Tower were

a) built by French architects.
b) invented by John Logie Baird.
c) practised by Australian sportsmen.
d) was written in 1787.
e) were built by the Wright brothers and Alberto Santos Dumont.
f) by Ian Fleming.

B Work in pairs. Discuss. Do you think the sentences are true (T) or false (F)?

A: *I don't think that penicillin was discovered by Ian Fleming.*
B: *No, he wrote …*

F COMPLAINING

5 A Underline the correct alternative to complete the conversations.

Conversation 1

A: Hello. Could I speak to Mike Jones?
B: Yes, I'll get him.
A: Hi, Mike. I'm [1]*afraid/frightened* there's a problem with the computer. It's crashed.
B: OK, just bring it over and we'll look [2]*up to/into it* right away.

Conversation 2

A: Excuse me. I'm afraid I [3]*have/make* a complaint.
B: Oh really. What's the matter?
A: It's this remote control I bought from you. It [4]*doesn't/isn't* work.
B: Oh yes, this part's faulty. Would you like another one?

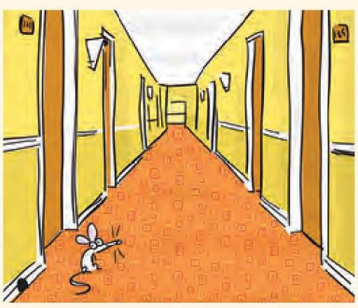
B Work in pairs. Practise the conversations.

6 Work in pairs and role-play the situations. Student A: you are a customer. Read the situation and make complaints. Student B: you are the manager. Try to help the customer.

Situation 1
You are in Yumi Yumi, Europe's most expensive noodle bar. You have just found a hair in your noodles.



Situation 2
You are in the reception of the five-star La Plaza Mayor Hotel. An hour ago you saw a mouse in your room. You called reception, but nobody came.



Situation 3
You are in a first class seat on a flight from New York to Paris. Your personal TV doesn't work, there's a strange smell in the cabin and you are cold.



https://polcet.edu.vn

11 technology



KEEPING IN TOUCH p108



MAKE A DIFFERENCE p110



I TOTALLY DISAGREE p112



IS TV BAD FOR KIDS? p114

SPEAKING **11.1** Talk about things you've done **11.2** Talk about future consequences **11.3** Give your opinion **11.4** Talk about technology you couldn't live without

LISTENING **11.1** Listen to people talking about how they keep in touch **11.3** Listen to a discussion about the internet **11.4** Watch an extract from a BBC documentary about giving up television

READING **11.2** Read an article about social media

WRITING **11.1** Improve your use of pronouns **11.4** Write your opinion

BBC

INTERVIEWS

How do you feel about technology?



https://polcet.edu.vn

11.1 KEEPING IN TOUCH

G present perfect
P sentence stress
V communication

VOCABULARY

COMMUNICATION

1 Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in the quiz.



How often do you and your partner do these things?

Write often (O), sometimes (S) or never (N) next to each thing.

	You	Your partner
use your mobile (phone)		
write a blog		
use a video sharing site		
check your email		
send an SMS (text message)		
'chat' online		
update your webpage		
Skype someone		
follow a blog		
share links		
post messages		
use social networking sites		

LISTENING

2 A 11.1 Listen to four people talking about how they keep in touch. Match each speaker to the type of communication in Exercise 1.

Speaker 1 _____ Speaker 3 _____
Speaker 2 _____ Speaker 4 _____

B What benefits of these communication technologies do the speakers mention? What negative points? Listen again to check.

C Read the sentences from the recording. Do you agree? Discuss with other students.

1 I get really annoyed when you're talking to someone … and they're texting someone else. I think that's really rude.
2 Generally, I think technology is wonderful.
3 The only problem (with social networking sites like Facebook) is that I keep checking it when I should be working.

GRAMMAR

PRESENT PERFECT

3 A Read sentences 1–3 and match them with sentences a)–c) below.

1 I haven't learnt how to do it myself **yet.**
2 I've **just** started to use networking sites.
3 We've been to so many places **already**.

a) I started a few days ago.
b) We didn't think it was possible to travel so much.
c) But I hope to learn soon.

B Complete the rules with *just, yet* and *already*.

RULES

1 Use _____ in negative sentences or questions, for something you expected to happen before now.
2 Use _____ for something that happened a short time ago.
3 Use _____ for something which happened before now, or earlier than expected.

▷ page 148 LANGUAGEBANK

4 A Make sentences with the prompts. Use the present perfect.

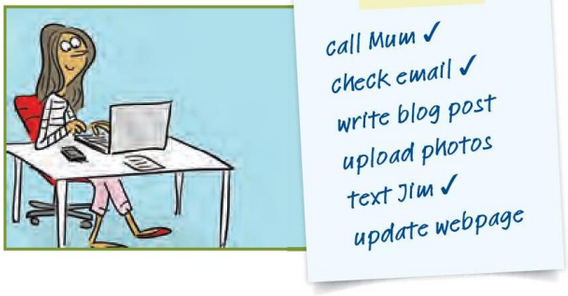
1 just / buy / new / I / car
I've just bought a new car.
2 sport / not / do / yet / I / week / this / any
3 have a baby / just / my best friend
4 already / have a holiday / I / this year
5 I / my studies / finish / yet / not
6 new / James Bond / see / film / already / I
7 move / I / house / just
8 I / English course / already / next / pay for / my

B Make the sentences true for you.
I've had the same car since 1998!

C Work in pairs and compare your answers.

https://polcet.edu.vn

5 Look at the cartoon and the 'Things to do' list. What things has the woman already done? What hasn't she done yet?



6 A 11.2 Listen and write the sentences you hear.

B SENTENCE STRESS Listen again and repeat, paying attention to the rhythm of each sentence.

SPEAKING

7 A Work in pairs. Look at the things in the box below and answer the questions.

travel abroad start an exercise programme write a regular blog learn to play an instrument learn to drive a car/motorbike create my own webpage

1 Which of these have you done already?
2 Which haven't you done yet, but would like to do?
3 Which have you just done?

B Write a list of five things you want/need to do this week.

C Look at your partner's list. Ask questions to find out what he/she has done already, and what he/she hasn't done yet.

A: I need to organise my holiday.
B: OK. Have you already decided where to go?
A: Yes. But I haven't booked the tickets yet.

speakout TIP

Every month, write a list of five things you want to do to improve your English, e.g. *watch a film in English, read an English newspaper, write an email,* etc. Check your list at the end of the month to see how many of the things you have done.

WRITING

PRONOUNS

8 A Read the travel blog. Match the words in bold to the things they refer to in the box.

Izmir the course my new friends (x2) Ahmed (x2) my new friends' and my the city centre

It's big, beautiful and busy, … It = Izmir

Neil's blog

August, Izmir



I've just arrived in Izmir. **It**'s big, beautiful and busy, and the people are so friendly. I've only been here for one week and I've made lots of new friends already. Most of **them** are students too, and **they**'re new to Izmir. **Our** course hasn't started yet, but I'm really looking forward to **it**.

I'm going to share a flat with another student, Ahmed. I haven't met **him** yet, but **he** sounds nice on the phone. The flat is near the city centre and there are lots of bars and restaurants near **there**, so it should be good for going out at night. More news in September.

Reply | Previous Message | Next Message

B Underline the correct alternative.

Use pronouns (*it, them, they,* etc.) *to avoid repetition of words/to write longer sentences.*

C Rewrite this travel blog. Replace the underlined words with *we, us, it, there, he, them, here, our,* etc.

64 Ting 12 Enjoy

Alecia and I have finally arrived in Bucharest, and Alecia and I love Bucharest. We thought we should update you on Alecia's and my tour. Last month we were in Hungary. We had a really good time in Hungary. We met a man called George, who was very friendly. George took us to some wonderful lakes and castles, and we really enjoyed the lakes and castles. The other news is that we have decided to stay in Bucharest for at least two years. We think living in Bucharest will be a wonderful experience for Alecia and me.

< back to top more >



https://polcet.edu.vn

11.2 MAKE A DIFFERENCE

G real conditionals + *when*
P weak forms: *will*
V feelings

VOCABULARY

FEELINGS

1 A Work in pairs. Discuss. Do you use social media? Which ones are popular in your country? Do you use them? Why/Why not?

B Do you agree with the opinions below?

I tend to use social media sites when I'm **bored** and there's nothing better to do.

Social media makes me feel **nervous**. I'm **uncomfortable** sharing information with people I don't know.

I'm always **amazed** by how much useful information you can find on social media. For me, it's like a learning tool.

I'm **confused** as to why social media is so popular. I'm **worried** that it actually makes people feel **lonely**. Instead of having a few really good friends who they can talk to, young people now have hundreds of 'friends' who they know nothing about.

I'm really **excited** about social media because I think it can help people to change the world.

C Work in pairs. Look at the words in bold in the opinions above. Match them with definitions 1–8 below.

1 How you feel when you have nothing to do.
bored
2 How you feel when you don't understand how something works.
3 How you feel when you are alone, and have no friends.
4 How you feel when something special is going to happen, and you are happy.
5 How you feel when you're unable to relax because you are embarrassed or worried.
6 How you feel when you are very positively surprised.
7 How you feel when you keep thinking about a problem or something bad that might happen, e.g. you might lose your job.
8 How you feel when you worry about something and cannot relax, e.g. before an exam.

D Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: think about the last time you were amazed/confused/excited/worried, etc. Tell your partner why you felt like that. Student B: ask for more information.

A: The last time I was really excited was before my birthday party.
B: Really? What did you do?
A: I had a barbecue in the garden.

Social Media as a Force for Change

For some people, social media might be a good way to keep in touch with friends, chat about the latest music download, or play games with each other. But social media is also being used by young people to change the world. 43 percent of people are 25 years old or younger, and many of these young people use mobile technology. If this generation isn't happy about something, they won't wait for politicians to change it; they'll use social media to change things themselves. These are some examples of how young people from around the world use technology and social media to really make a difference.



READING

2 A Read the introduction to an article and answer the questions.

1 What kind of situations do you think people can change by using social networks?
2 How do you think they might do this?

B Read the rest of the article. Does it mention your ideas?

C Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

1 How can social media help young people to organise political change?
2 What did McKenna Pope want to do? Was she successful?
3 How did the Karen Klein foundation start?

D Work in pairs. Discuss. Which examples in the article do you think are good uses of social media? Would you use social media for these kinds of things? Why/Why not?

https://polcet.edu.vn

Social Change

Social media has been very important for political protests and social change around the world. Large groups of people can now quickly organise themselves to protest against governments and use media to show the rest of the world what's happening. Groups like OccupyWallStreet build online communities which try to fight against what they see as an unfair global economy.

Online Petitions

13-year-old McKenna Pope saw that her younger brother enjoyed cooking and wanted to buy him a toy oven as a present. She went online, but found that she could only buy toy ovens designed for girls. She decided to start an online petition to Hasbro toys asking them to make toy ovens with pictures of boys on the package. In less than a month her petition received 45,000 signatures and Hasbro decided to change the packaging for their ovens.

Raising Money



When teenage bullies in New York filmed themselves making their school bus driver cry, they uploaded the video to YouTube and it went viral. Max Sidorov, a 25-year-old Canadian man, saw the video and was shocked. He started a campaign using social media to raise money to give the bus driver, 68-year-old Karen Klein, a holiday. He wanted to raise $5,000. However, within three weeks the campaign raised more than $600,000. When Karen received the money she used $100,000 to set up the Karen Klein foundation to try and stop bullying across America.

So, whatever your problem is, if you use social media, you'll find people who will help you change the world.

GRAMMAR

REAL CONDITIONALS + *IF/WHEN*

3 A **Look at sentences a)–d) and answer questions 1 and 2.**

a) **If** you use social media, you'**ll** find people who will help you.
b) **If** we raise enough money, the bus driver **won't** need to work any more.
c) **When** people see what's happening, they **will** be shocked.
d) The protests **will** continue **if** they don't change the government.

1 Are the sentences talking about the present or the future?
2 The sentences are divided into two clauses. What tense is used after the *if/when* clause? What tense is used in the main clause?

B **Underline the correct alternatives to complete the rules.**

RULES

1 Use real conditionals (*if/when* + present simple + *will*) to talk about the *present/future* consequence of a specific situation.
2 Use *if* for a situation which is *likely/certain*.
3 Use *when* for a situation which is *likely/certain*.
4 The *if/when* clause *can be at the beginning or the end of the sentence/must be at the beginning of the sentence.*

▷ page 148 **LANGUAGEBANK**

4 A **Put the verbs in brackets in the correct tense to complete the sentences.**

1 If you _____ (give) me your details, I _____ (send) you the photo.
2 If people _____ (sign) the petition, the company _____ (have to) respond.
3 When your friends _____ (see) the video, they _____ (not be) surprised.
4 If the situation _____ (get) worse, _____ you _____ (leave) your job?
5 If there _____ (not be) elections soon, people _____ (start) protesting.
6 When you _____ (see) this picture, I _____ (be) in the Canaries!
7 If the product _____ (be) really good, then people _____ (not write) bad reviews.
8 If they _____ (change) the design, _____ you _____ (buy) one?

B 11.3 **WEAK FORMS: *will*** **Listen to check. How is *will* pronounced?**

I'll send you the photo.

C 11.4 **Listen and repeat the sentences.**

5 A **Make sentences 1–8 true for you.**

1 If someone sends me an online petition, …
2 If I'm angry about the government or a big company, …
3 When I next go on holiday, …
4 When I get home this evening, …
5 If I'm hungry later, …
6 If someone invites me to a party, …
7 If I go out this weekend, …
8 If I lose my mobile phone, …

B **Work in pairs and compare your answers.**

SPEAKING

6 A **Work in groups. Think of a situation in your town/city/country which you are not very happy about (lifestyle/politics/business/environment) and discuss the questions. Then make your plan and prepare to present it to other students.**

1 How could you use social media to try and change the situation? What would you do?
2 Could you organise an online petition, or a protest, or try to raise some money?

B **Listen to the other groups' ideas for social media campaigns, and tell the group about the possible consequences of their actions.**

https://polcet.edu.vn

11.3 I TOTALLY DISAGREE

F giving opinions
P polite intonation
V internet terms

VOCABULARY

INTERNET TERMS

1 Work in pairs. Look at the internet terms in the box below and answer the questions.

travel website search engine online news social networking site music download site photo sharing site message board

1 Do you use/visit any of these?
2 Which ones do you visit most frequently?
3 Do you think they are useful/not very useful? Why?

READING

2 A Look at the picture. Do you think that people waste a lot of time on the internet when they should be working? Read the text to find out.



stop wasting time!

Many of us find it difficult to concentrate on a Friday, so it's no surprise that nearly half of us waste our time at work on a Friday afternoon by looking up funny news articles on the internet, watching silly cat videos, or planning our next holiday. But unfortunately the problem isn't just a Friday problem. People are wasting more and more time being distracted by the internet and social media when they should be working or studying. A report has shown how computer users waste up to eight days a month on the internet. Most of the people who were questioned said they were distracted 'all or most of the time' when they work or study online. The study showed that the internet can be bad for relationships too, as people argue with their partners who spend too much time in front of their computer or mobile device. Luckily, there is a simple answer to the problem: get off the internet and get on with life.

B Answer the questions.

1 What is the problem with Friday afternoons?
2 What kind of distractions does the article talk about?
3 How much time do people waste not working?
4 Why is the internet bad for relationships?

3 Work in pairs. Discuss. Do you think being on the internet is a good way to spend your free time or do you think people spend too much time on the internet?

FUNCTION

GIVING OPINIONS

4 11.5 Listen to three people discussing the internet. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

1 The men both use the internet at work.
2 The woman thinks people shouldn't use the internet when they are at work.
3 The men both think that the internet is a waste of time.
4 The woman says some people prefer the internet to sport.

5 A Look at statements 1–6. Tick the ideas that are mentioned in the recording.

Surfing on the internet is:

1 addictive. Some people can't stop using it.
2 bad for relationships.
3 dangerous. You can meet dangerous people on the internet.
4 good when you want a break from work.
5 causing people to fail their university degrees because they spend too much time on social networking sites when they should be studying.
6 a waste of time.

B Listen again to check.

https://polcet.edu.vn

6 A 11.6 Listen and complete the phrases in the table.

agreeing	disagreeing	giving an opinion
That's _____ _____ true	I totally _____ I'm not _____ about that	I _____ I _____ think

B Look at audio script 11.5 on page 175. Underline the phrases for agreeing, disagreeing and giving opinions. Find one more phrase to add to each column in the table above.

▷ page 148 LANGUAGEBANK

7 A Find and correct the mistakes in the conversations below. There is a mistake in each response.

1 **A:** Everyone should learn a second language.
B: I think too. It's very useful.
2 **A:** It's not polite to arrive late for an appointment.
B: That true. I always arrive on time.
3 **A:** It's good to ask as many questions as possible in class.
B: I'm not sure by that. Some students ask too many questions.
4 **A:** It's best to live in a hot sunny country.
B: So definitely. Everybody loves the sunshine.
5 **A:** Children should study for exams from the age of six.
B: I am totally disagree. No child under ten should have to study for an exam.
6 **A:** Everyone loves classical music.
B: I don't think. Most people like pop music.

B Work in pairs. Student A: read out A's opinions. Student B: respond with your own opinion. Then change roles.



LEARN TO

DISAGREE POLITELY

8 A Look at the responses in 1–5 below. Which do you think is more polite? Tick A or B.

1 **A:** I'm sorry, but I really don't see what the problem is.
B: I really don't see what the problem is.
2 **A:** I disagree.
B: I'm not sure about that.
3 **A:** I don't think it's a waste of time at all.
B: It's not a waste of time.
4 **A:** That's true, but I don't think the problem is the internet.
B: The problem is not using the internet.
5 **A:** I totally disagree.
B: I'm afraid I totally disagree.

B 11.7 POLITE INTONATION Listen to check your answers. Notice the intonation. What does the speaker do to sound polite?

C Work in pairs. Practise saying the phrases using polite intonation.

speakout TIP

Use language carefully when you disagree. Don't be too direct. Use phrases like *I'm sorry, but …* , *I'm afraid …* , *I'm not sure …* and *I don't think …*

SPEAKING

9 A Choose two or three statements below. Do you agree/disagree? Write your opinion in a few words.

B Work in groups and compare your ideas.

You shouldn't believe what you read on the internet.

The internet has made the world a better place.

A lot of the technology we use is not necessary.

It's better to talk to someone than to send them a text message.

Downloading songs for free is OK.

Online books will mean the end of bookshops.

Everybody in the world should have a computer.

https://polcet.edu.vn

11.4 BBC IS TV BAD FOR KIDS?

DVD PREVIEW

1 Work in pairs. Discuss. Which of the things in the box do you own? Which do you use every day? Which items you use are the most useful? Rank the items.

smart phone laptop TV DVD player microwave tablet digital camera

2 A Work in pairs. What numbers do you think complete 1–5 in the quiz below? Check the answers on page 166.

Did you know...?

1 In the USA a child watches TV for an average of __ hours a day.
2 In parts of the UK, more than __ percent of primary school children have a TV in their bedroom.
3 The average person spends __ years eating and __ years watching TV.
4 Children under three years old who watch more than __ hour(s) of TV a day may have problems concentrating at school when they are older.
5 In the USA some families spend only __ minutes a week having meaningful conversations with their children. Those children spend __ minutes a week watching TV.

B Discuss. How many hours do you spend watching TV per week? Do you think this is OK/too much/not enough?

3 Read the programme information and answer the questions.

1 What do you think the children will do when their televisions and video games are taken away?
2 How do you think the parents will feel during the experiment?

Panorama: Is TV Bad For Kids?

Panorama is a BBC documentary series that looks at important issues. In this programme Jeremy Vine does an experiment in the UK: for two weeks several families have to live without televisions, computers and video games. Can they survive? What can we learn from the experiment? Watch to find out.



DVD VIEW

4 Watch the DVD. Were your ideas in Exercise 3 correct?

5 Watch the DVD again. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)?

1 Children who watch too much TV get fat.
2 The programme *Panorama* went to a secondary school in Manchester.
3 They took the microwaves out of the homes of half the children in the class.
4 They gave the children a camera to record what happened.
5 The parents had to work a lot harder when there were no TVs.
6 After the experiment, the families watched the same amount of TV as before.

6 Work in pairs and answer the questions.

1 What do you think of the experiment? Do you think it was a good idea?
2 How do parents keep their children entertained in your country?



https://polcet.edu.vn

speakout technology

7 A 11.8 Listen to people talking about essential gadgets. Write them in the correct column.

speaker	essential	not essential
1	*smart phone*	*television*
2		

B Listen again and tick the key phrases you hear.

KEYPHRASES

That's essential.
I love it.
I use it [all the time/every day] …
I couldn't live without …
It's good/important because …
I don't go anywhere without it/I take it everywhere.
I need it in case …
I suppose I don't need …
I can live without …
It's very useful.

C Decide which gadgets are essential/not essential for you. Think about why you need them. Make some notes. Use the key phrases to help you.

D Work in groups. Tell your group why you need the gadgets you chose. Which are the most popular?

writeback a web comment

8 A Read the comments. Do these people think technology is good or bad? Why?

PEOPLE FORUM TOPIC Archive

Is technology a good or a bad thing?

How have computers, the internet, email and mobile phones changed your life? Have they changed the way we do business? Are there good and bad things about technology? What do you think?



Shantanu, USA/India
reply – Most people say technology has made our lives very fast and very convenient. But I don't think so. The fact is that it has also made us very lonely. We interact with machines for 8–10 hours a day and spend less than 2–3 hours interacting with other humans.



Jake, UK
reply – It seems to me that technology is a good thing. It allows me to find out what is **really** happening in the world, not just what the media want me to believe. The problem is that some governments want to control what is available on the internet too.

B Write your own comment using the structure below.

It seems to me that technology _____.
Most people say _____. But I'm not sure about that/I don't think so. In my opinion, _____.
For example, _____.
The fact is that/The problem is that _____.
Finally, _____. Technology _____ my life.



https://polcet.edu.vn

11.5 LOOKBACK

V COMMUNICATION

1 A **Complete the words.**

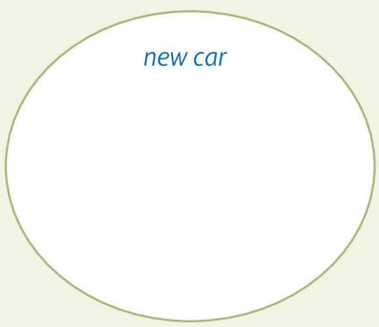
1 Can you remember life without a m_b_l_ ph_n_? Do you use one every day?
2 Do any of your friends have a w_b p_g_?
3 Do you prefer to speak to someone on the phone or send an S_S (t_xt m_ss_g_)?
4 What kind of l_ nks do you find interesting?
5 Are there any bl_gs that you read regularly? Why do you like them?
6 Do you like to ch_t online?

B **Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.**

G PRESENT PERFECT

2 A **Write answers to 1–6 in the circle below.**

1 The name of something you have just bought.
2 The name of something you would like, but you haven't bought yet.
3 Somewhere you have already spent a lot of time.
4 Somewhere you haven't been to yet, but you plan to.
5 Something you have just finished (a book/a course, etc.).
6 Something you have done already today.



B **Work in pairs and take turns. Look at each of the words/ phrases in your circles. Ask for more information.**

A: A new car … Have you just bought one?
B: That's right.
A: What kind of car did you buy?
B: A Peugeot.

V FEELINGS

3 A **Complete the sentence in different ways using the words in the box.**

nervous	lonely	bored
uncomfortable	confused	
worried	amazed	excited

I feel _____ when …
I feel nervous when I have to do an exam.

B **Work in pairs. Discuss. What do you do in each situation to make yourself feel better?**

G REAL CONDITIONALS + *WHEN*

4 A **Match 1–6 with a)–f) to make sentences.**

1 If you break a mirror,
2 If you walk under a ladder,
3 If you find a penny on the floor,
4 If you eat an apple a day,
5 If you give away a wedding present,
6 If a baby is born at 12 o'clock,

a) it will keep the doctor away.
b) he/she will be very lucky when he/she grows up.
c) paint might fall on your head.
d) your marriage will fail.
e) you will have seven years' bad luck.
f) you will have good luck all day.

B **Work in pairs. Discuss. Do you have the same superstitions in your country? What other superstitions are there?**

5 A **Write down three things that might happen to you in the next six months.**
I might find a job abroad.

B **Work in pairs. Discuss the possible consequences.**

A: I might find a job abroad.
B: What will happen if you do that?
A: I'll have to move house.

F GIVING OPINIONS

6 A **Put the words in the correct order to complete the conversations.**

Conversation 1
A: I think video sharing sites are bad for children.
B: totally / disagree / afraid / I / I'm

Conversation 2
A: Nobody should eat meat.
B: not / that / I'm / about / sure

Conversation 3
A: all / drugs / my / be / opinion / should / in / legal
B: I'm sorry, but I don't think that's a good idea.

Conversation 4
A: I really think teachers should be paid more money.
B: right / that's / so / too / think / I

Conversation 5
A: government / do / the / better / next / think / be / you / will?
B: Definitely!

Conversation 6
A: Children under the age of ten shouldn't have a mobile phone.
B: so / think / I / don't

Conversation 7
A: I can never find anything I want to watch on television. It's all rubbish.
B: agree / true / that's / I

Conversation 8
A: Policemen should all carry guns.
B: totally / I / disagree

B **Work in pairs and take turns. Practise the conversations. Give your own opinions and remember to use polite intonation.**

A: I think video sharing sites can be dangerous.
B: Yes, I agree. Anyone can upload videos of illegal things.

https://polcet.edu.vn

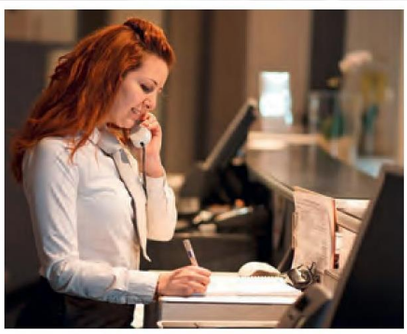
12 fame



CAUGHT ON FILM p118



A LUCKY BREAK p120



WHAT CAN I DO FOR YOU? p122



BILLION DOLLAR MAN p124

SPEAKING **12.1** Talk about your favourite film **12.2** Talk about becoming famous **12.3** Make requests and offers **12.4** Talk about your ambitions

LISTENING **12.2** Listen to people talking about being famous **12.3** Listen to people making requests **12.4** Watch an extract from a BBC documentary about Lewis Hamilton

READING **12.1** Read a magazine article about writing a blockbuster **12.2** Read a magazine article about fame **12.3** Read a text about concierges

WRITING **12.2** Write about a famous person **12.4** Write about your childhood ambitions

BBC

INTERVIEWS

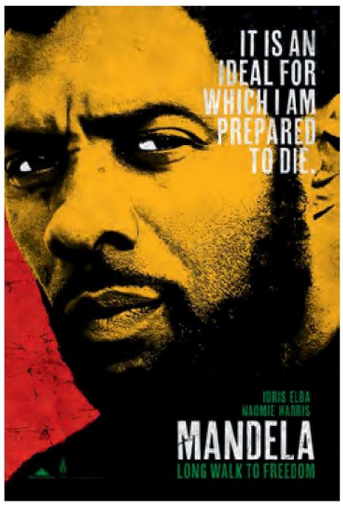
Would you like to be famous?



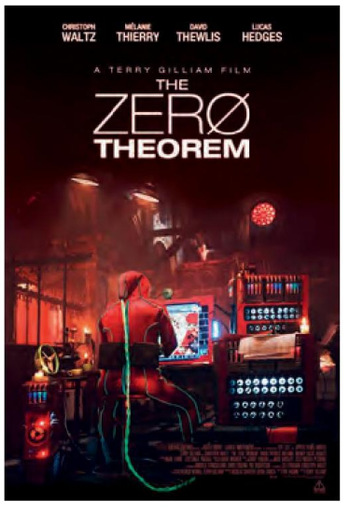
https://polcet.edu.vn

12.1 CAUGHT ON FILM

G reported speech
P contrastive stress
V film









VOCABULARY

FILM

1 A Look at the film posters and match them to the types of film in the box. Which ones fit more than one category?

Mandela: Long Walk to Freedom *is a biopic and a drama*

an action film a comedy a science fiction film a (historical) drama a horror film a thriller a documentary a biopic a blockbuster a cartoon

B Work in pairs. Discuss the questions.

1 Can you think of examples of the other types of film in the box?
2 Have you seen any of the films in the posters? What did you think of them?
3 What's your favourite type of film?

READING

2 A Discuss in pairs.

1 Can you name any films that have been very popular recently? Why do you think they were so popular?
2 Do you think blockbusters have a 'formula' (fixed rules for writing them)?

B Read the text to find an answer to question 2.

How to Write a HOLLYWOOD BLOCKBUSTER

Look at any list of Hollywood's biggest movies. What do you see? Firstly, most use myths. The heroes' lives are world-shaking stories, part Bible, part fantasy. Myths are useful because they travel across cultures; and the biggest movies are seen everywhere from Belgium to Bali to Brazil.

Related to myths is setting. Blockbusters are often set in amazing, alternative worlds. *Avatar* takes place in a natural paradise, but the film involves blue people who can fly. Harry Potter goes to a British private school, but it's full of monsters and wizards.

Not all blockbusters need monsters, but the heroes and their opponents must be strong. The opponent might be an evil wizard (Voldemort in the Harry Potter films), a cat-stroking genius (James Bond films), or something inhuman and almost unstoppable (dinosaurs in *Jurassic Park*). If it's human, the bad guy needs good lines. Some phrases in films are more memorable than the film itself!

What about structure? Blockbusters come in three parts. The first act introduces the main character and the problem he/she faces. The second act sees the character trying to solve the problem, but failing. In the third act, the character finally defeats the opponent.

The third act is also where the biggest set piece happens. Set pieces are action scenes – a huge battle (*The Lord of the Rings*) or a car chase (Jason Bourne films) – and they are big, expensive and memorable.

Include all of the above, find a studio and a director, and see your movie light up the world!

THE BIGGEST-SELLING MOVIES

1 Avatar (2009) - $2.8 billion
Famous line: *'Out there is the true world and in here is the dream.'*

2 Titanic (1997) - $2.2 BILLION
Famous line: *'I am the king of the world!'*

3 The Avengers (2012) - $1.5 billion
Famous line: Steve Rogers: *'Doctor Banner, now might be a good time for you to get angry.'* Bruce Banner: *'That's my secret, Captain: I'm always angry.'*

4 Harry Potter and the Deathly Hallows – Part 2 (2011) - $1.4 BILLION
Famous line: Harry: *'We have to go there now!'* Hermione: *'We can't do that! We've got to plan!'* Harry: *'Hermione! When have any of our plans ever actually worked?'*

https://polcet.edu.vn

3 Find words in the text that match the definitions below.

1 a very old story about gods, magical creatures, etc. (paragraph 1)
2 the place or time in which the events of a film or book happen (paragraph 2)
3 someone who is competing against you (paragraph 3)
4 the way in which the parts of something are organised (paragraph 4)
5 a short part of a film, where the events happen in one place (paragraph 5)
6 a film company or the place where films are made (paragraph 6)

4 Discuss with other students.

1 Do you think it's easy to write a blockbuster if you follow the 'rules' in the text? What might be difficult?
2 Have you seen any of the top four biggest-selling movies? If so, do you think they follow the 'rules'? Did you enjoy these films? Why/Why not?

GRAMMAR

REPORTED SPEECH

5 Read the famous lines in the first column below. Compare the words spoken to the reported sentences in the second column. Answer questions 1–2 below.

1 How do the verb forms change?
2 Which verbs do we use to report speech?

direct speech	reported speech
'Out there is the true world and in here is the dream.'	He said out there was the true world and in here was the dream.
'I am the king of the world!'	He said he was the king of the world.
'I'm always angry.'	He told Steve he was always angry.
'We have to go there!'	He told Hermione they had to go there.

▷ page 150 **LANGUAGEBANK**

6 A Put the paragraph below into reported speech. Begin each sentence with *He told me* or *He said*.

'I'm an actor. I love my job, but I don't like playing criminals. I live in Hollywood, where I work as a waiter.'

He told me he was an actor. He said he …

B 12.1 **CONTRASTIVE STRESS** Listen to different ways of saying *He told me he was an actor*. How does the stress affect the message?

C 12.2 Listen to the sentences and read audio script 12.2 on page 176. Which words are stressed? Why?

7 A Complete the Favourite film quotes quiz questions with *said* or *told*. Then circle the correct answer.

B Check your answers on page 166.

C Work in pairs. Read the quotes again and change them to reported speech.

1 She said she had a feeling they weren't in Kansas anymore.

Favourite film quotes

1 Who _____ a dog, *'I have a feeling we aren't in Kansas anymore'*?
a) the dog owner in *Amores Perros*.
b) Dorothy in *The Wizard of Oz*.

2 Who _____, *'Greed is good'*?
a) Morgan Spurlock in *Super Size Me*.
b) Michael Douglas in *Wall Street*.

3 Who _____, *'It's alive!'*?
a) Sigourney Weaver in *Alien*.
b) The crazy doctor in *Frankenstein*.

4 Who _____ engineers at Houston, *'We have a problem'*?
a) Tom Hanks in *Apollo 13*.
b) Harrison Ford in *Star Wars*.

5 Who _____, *'I want to be alone'*?
a) Greta Garbo in *Grand Hotel*.
b) The computer Hal in *A Space Odyssey*.

6 Who _____ a policeman, *'I think this is the beginning of a beautiful friendship'*?
a) Humphrey Bogart in *Casablanca*.
b) Hugh Grant in *Notting Hill*.

SPEAKING

8 A You are going to describe one of your favourite films. Think about how you can complete the phrases below.

1 The film is about …
2 It's set in …
3 It's directed by …
4 The star(s) of the film is/are …
5 He/She played a/an …
6 One of the best scenes takes place …
7 It has a happy/surprise/sad ending: …
8 I like the film because …

B Work in pairs and take turns. Describe the film and make a note of your partner's answers. If you have time, ask follow-up questions.

Who's your favourite actor? Do you have a favourite director?

C Work with other students. Tell them what your first partner said.

He said Mamma Mia *was his favourite film.*
She said she liked films by Akira Kurosawa because they told great stories.

https://polcet.edu.vn

12.2 A LUCKY BREAK

G hypothetical conditionals present/future
P word stress
V suffixes



Internet Fame

The internet has changed the meaning of 'celebrity'. In the past, you had to be a successful actor, musician or footballer to be famous. Now all you need is the internet. In 1968, artist Andy Warhol said, 'In the future, everyone will be famous for fifteen minutes.' With the invention of the internet and YouTube, maybe that time is now. Now, a kid with a webcam can become an instant film star, and even a cat with a grumpy face can make their owner famous. When Tabatha Bundesen's brother posted a photo of their cat on the internet, Grumpy Cat became an overnight internet sensation, and later a company worth more than $1 million. Tavi Gevinson was twelve years old when she started her own fashion blog, but she quickly found herself on the front page of newspapers and magazines and interviewed on television. These are the new superstars, celebrities of the future.



VOCABULARY

SUFFIXES

1 Work in pairs. Do you think it would be good to be famous? What are the positive/negative things about being famous?

2 A Discuss. What do you think a 'web celebrity' is? Read the article to find out.

B Answer the questions.

1 What is different about fame now?
2 How do people become famous on the internet?
3 Can you think of examples of web celebrities?

3 A Look at the article above and find one example of a word with each suffix. Write them in the table.

adjective endings		noun endings		
-ful	*-ous*	*-ion*	*-ity*	*-er/-or/-ian* (jobs)
successful				

B Complete words 1–8 below and put them in the correct column in the table.

1 celebrat_____
2 photograph_____
3 politic_____
4 popular_____
5 adventur_____ (adj)
6 help_____ (adj)
7 danger_____
8 wonder_____

C 12.3 **WORD STRESS** Listen to check your answers. Underline the main stress.

D Can you think of any other words with these suffixes?

LISTENING

4 A Work in pairs. Discuss. If you could be famous, what would you like to be famous for?

B 12.4 Listen to eight people answering the question. Put the number of the speaker next to the thing they mention.

an artist *1*	an actress	a singer/dancer
a musician	successful in business	
a politician/president	a model	
a footballer/sportsperson	a writer	
a scientist/inventor		

5 A Listen again and complete the sentences.

1 If I had more _____, I would love to paint.
2 If I was a politician, I would try to _____ the world.
3 Imagine if you scored a goal for your country in the _____ Cup, that would be such a good feeling.
4 I'd love to _____. If I could be famous for anything, I think I'd be a singer.
5 I'd like to be remembered as a great _____.
6 If I was famous, I would be _____, live in a big house, and have all those clothes.
7 If I invented something that made people's _____ better, that would be good.
8 If I was famous, I wouldn't be _____.

B Work in pairs. Discuss. Do you agree with any of the speakers?

A: I think I'd like to be a model.
B: Really? I wouldn't …

https://polcet.edu.vn

GRAMMAR

HYPOTHETICAL CONDITIONALS

6 A Look at Exercise 5A and complete the table.

If clause: *If* + past tense	main clause: *would/wouldn't* (+ infinitive)
If I [1]_____ more time, If I was famous, If I [3]_____ a politician,	I would love to paint. I [2]_____ be happy. I would try to change the world.

B Underline the correct alternatives to complete the rules.

RULES

1 Use hypothetical conditionals for *real/imaginary* situations in the present.
If I was famous (but I'm not …), I would …
2 Use hypothetical conditionals for *likely* (probable)/*unlikely* (impossible) situations in the future.
If I didn't have to work tomorrow (but I do), I would …

▷ page 150 **LANGUAGEBANK**

7 Underline the correct alternative.

1 If I *was/would be* a famous footballer, I would live in a big house.
2 If she *worked/would work* harder, I'm sure she'd be more successful.
3 If I did more sport, I *would feel/felt* fitter.
4 If I *had/would have* the day off, I would stay in bed.
5 If I *didn't/wouldn't* work or study, I would be bored.
6 I would read more if I *didn't have/wouldn't have* a TV.
7 I *would use/used* my bicycle more if I didn't have a car.

8 A Use the prompts to make questions with hypothetical conditionals.

1 If / have / no money / what / do?
If you had no money, what would you do?
2 If / can / have dinner / with any two living people / who / choose?
3 If / can / do any job / what / do?
4 If / have / more time / what / do?
5 If / can / change one thing about yourself / what / change?

B Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.

WRITING

PARAGRAPHS

9 A Put sentences a)–d) in the correct paragraphs to complete the profile of Jack Monroe.

a) Jack grew up in Essex and left school aged sixteen.
b) Jack is now a successful journalist who campaigns against poverty.
c) Jack Monroe was a 24-year-old mother of one who started writing an online blog ('A Girl Called Jack') when she was unemployed and looking for work.
d) She sold almost everything she owned (car, watch, TV, phone) in order to buy enough food for her and her two-year-old son to eat, but she found they were still hungry.

A girl called Jack

[1]_____ She became an overnight celebrity when she wrote a blog post called 'Hunger Hurts' talking about how difficult life is when you're living on very little money.

[2]_____ She had a well-paid job with the Fire Service until she had a baby, and it became difficult to find childcare to allow her to work nights. After 18 months of being unemployed, she found herself living in poverty.

[3]_____ She started the blog to talk about her experiences, and give people recipes for eating healthily using very little money. The blog was a huge success and soon Jack Monroe was asked to write articles in newspapers, appear on television, and talk to the government about poverty.

[4]_____ She has won awards for her blog and has published a book of her recipes.



B Choose the correct heading for each paragraph.

Achievements
Rise to fame
Childhood and education
Introduction

speakout TIP

Each paragraph should have a different topic. The first sentence of each paragraph (the topic sentence) should introduce that paragraph. Plan the topic of the paragraph before you start writing.

C Research the life of a famous person you admire or read the profile on page 167. Write the profile of this person using paragraphs.

https://polcet.edu.vn

12.3 WHAT CAN I DO FOR YOU?

F requests and offers
P polite intonation: requests
V collocations







VOCABULARY

COLLOCATIONS

1 A Work in pairs. Complete phrases 1–6 by adding the correct letters.

1 *g*et tickets for a concert/a good seat
2 r_ _t a car for the day/a holiday home
3 b_ _ _ a table for two/tickets for a show
4 _n_ _t_ someone to dinner/someone to a party
5 _ _c_ _m_ _d somewhere good to visit/a restaurant
6 _ _ g_n_s_ a private tour/a meeting

B Look at photos A–C. Which of the things in Exercise 1A can you see?

C Work in pairs. Discuss. How often do you do the things in Exercise 1A?

I sometimes get tickets for a concert. The last concert I saw was …

READING

2 A Read the definition. Discuss. What other things do you think a personal concierge does to help rich and famous clients?

P **personal concierge** *noun* someone who organises things for (usually rich) clients, e.g. booking tables in restaurants, buying tickets for concerts, etc.

B Read the text to find out.

Concierge

He can book you a table at the world's top restaurants, get you the best seats for *The Lion King*, find you a private plane for the next day or organise a red carpet for you at the Oscars. He's a personal concierge and he can get you anything you want … if you have enough money!

The concierges we spoke to have done some amazing things for their clients: one got twenty tickets for a Rolling Stones concert an hour before it started; he also flew some of Madonna's favourite tea to London and found some rare birds for Jennifer Lopez. Another concierge asked former US President, Bill Clinton, to have dinner with his client. Clinton said 'yes'!

FUNCTION

REQUESTS AND OFFERS

3 A 12.5 Listen to four conversations with a hotel concierge. What does each person want?

B Listen again. Complete the sentences with one word.

1 I'd _____ to go to a local restaurant.
2 _____ you recommend somewhere?
3 _____ you like me to call a taxi?
4 Would it be _____ to borrow one from the hotel?
5 Do you _____ me to send one up to your room?
6 Would you be _____ to book two tickets for us?
7 _____ I book the tickets for you?

C Look at sentences 1–7 again and answer the questions.

a) Which phrases are requests (R) and which are offers (O)?
b) Which request says what we want to do?
c) Which two requests ask if something is possible?
d) Which request asks for someone's opinion?

▷ page 150 LANGUAGEBANK

https://polcet.edu.vn

4 A Put the words in the correct order to make questions or sentences.

1 food / to / like / I'd / local / try / some
2 recommend / nightclub / a / could / good / you ?
3 book / be / tickets / would / to / three / you / able ?
4 car / rent / would / be / it / to / a / possible ?
5 I / ticket / buy / shall / your ?
6 table / book / want / you / to / do / a / me ?
7 to / the / like / manager / me / you / call / would ?

B Match questions 1–7 above with responses a)–g).

a) Yes, I'll print out some information for you about the daily rates.
b) There are some excellent restaurants in this area.
c) There's a famous one that opens at midnight.
d) Certainly. I'll just call the box office.
e) Yes, for six people, please.
f) No, don't worry – I'll speak to him myself.
g) Yes, please. I'll pay you back later.

5 A Complete the sentences in any way you choose.

1 Could you recommend a _____?
2 Would you be able to _____ for me?
3 Would it be possible to _____?
4 Could you recommend somewhere to _____?

B Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: read your sentence. Student B: respond.

A: Could you recommend a good café?
B: Yes, go to The Café on the Bridge. It serves great coffee! Do you want me to take you there?



C 12.6 **POLITE INTONATION: requests** Listen to the requests. Notice how the speaker's voice is high to start and then becomes lower. This sounds polite.

D Listen again and repeat. Pay attention to the intonation.

LEARN TO

ASK FOR MORE TIME

6 A Look at the extracts from audio script 12.5 on page 176. Underline three more phrases to ask for more time.

Extract 1
B: Could you recommend somewhere?
A: Yes, of course. Hang on. We have a list on a map.

Extract 2
A: Would you like me to call a taxi? It's about a five minute drive.
C: That would be wonderful.
A: OK, just a moment. I'll see if there's one waiting.

Extract 3
A: An adaptor plug? Of course. Do you want me to send one up to your room?
D: Yes, please.
A: Can you give me a moment? I'll ask at the desk.

Extract 4
E: Would you be able to book two tickets for us?
A: Hold on. Let me just check where it's playing.

B Are the phrases formal or informal? Which expression do you think is the most formal?

7 Complete B's responses with one word.

Conversation 1
A: Can you get me a meeting with the CEO?
B: Hang. I'll call him.

Conversation 2
A: I'd like to rent the hall for a party on the tenth of May.
B: Can you give a moment? I need to check it's free that day.

Conversation 3
A: Would it be possible to get tickets for the show?
B: A moment. I'll check online.

Conversation 4
A: Would I be able to get a flight this afternoon?
B: Hold. I'll call the airline.

SPEAKING

8 Work in pairs. Student A: look at page 165. Student B: look at page 167. Read your roles.

9 A Write out one of your conversations. Try to use phrases for making requests and offers and asking for time.

B Act out your conversation in front of other students.

https://polcet.edu.vn

12.4 BBC BILLION DOLLAR MAN

DVD PREVIEW

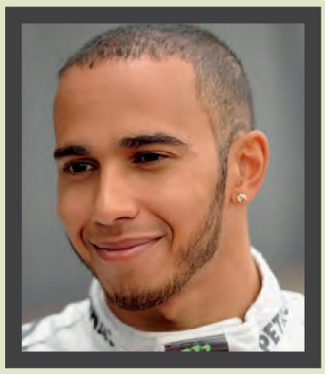
1 Work in groups and discuss the questions.

1 Can you name any Formula 1 drivers?
2 What type of person do you think can become a Formula 1 driver?

2 Read the programme information. Who is the programme about, and what type of things might you learn by watching it?

Lewis Hamilton: Billion Dollar Man

Billion Dollar Man is a BBC documentary about Formula One (F1) driver and celebrity, Lewis Hamilton. The programme describes Hamilton's early life in the UK, and how he used his talent to become one of the best and most famous drivers in the world.



DVD VIEW

3 Watch the DVD. What type of things do you learn about Lewis Hamilton and F1? Use the ideas in the box to help you.

who he is now	F1 facts	early days as a racer
teenage ambitions	route to F1	

4 A Read the notes about Lewis Hamilton's career. What words do you think complete the notes?

- Today, Hamilton is described as 'Formula 1 driver, model, celebrity, [1]_____.'
- When he was six, he started racing electric [2]_____.
- A few years later, he raced go-karts, but dreamed of joining [3]_____.
- He won [4]_____ British go-karting championships.
- He liked F1 because of the speed, being with 'the big guys' and making [5]_____.
- After go-karting, he joined [6]_____.
- The best drivers are seen by F1 [7]_____.
- Spent [8]_____ years in Formula 3.

B Watch the DVD again to check your answers.

5 Discuss. Why do you think fans, journalists, etc. 'love' Lewis Hamilton? What is unusual about this story?



https://polcet.edu.vn

speakout dreams and ambitions

6 A 12.7 **Listen to Marianna talking about her dreams and ambitions. Tick the questions she answers.**

1 Where did you grow up?
2 When you were younger, did you dream of doing a particular job?
3 What/Who inspired you to do this?
4 Did you have a teacher/someone to help you to learn a special skill?
5 Have you achieved any of your dreams? What did you do?

B Work in pairs. What are Marianna's answers to the questions?

C You are going to talk about the dreams and ambitions you had when you were younger. First, think about your answers to the questions in Exercise 6A. Then look at the key phrases. Underline any phrases you want to use.

KEYPHRASES

I always wanted to be a …
As a child, I used to …
It started with …
I wanted to work …
I spent a lot of time …
As I grew up, I realised …
One day, I had the chance to …
Eventually, I …

D Work in pairs and take turns to talk about your childhood dreams/ambitions. Have they changed now that you are older? If so, how?

writeback a web comment

7 Read the website and answer the questions.

1 What did Damien want to be as a child?
2 What does he want to do now?

REFLECTIONS | CHILDHOOD AMBITIONS

How have your childhood ambitions changed? We asked people the following questions: What were your childhood ambitions? What do you do now? And what do you hope to become in the future?

Damien (31), Slovenia:
As a child, I always wanted to be a teacher. Both of my parents were teachers and they inspired me with a love of learning. Now, I have achieved that dream. I teach geography, history, art and sociology to 12–15-year-old students at a secondary school here in Ljubljana. I love working with children. It's much better than an office job. But now I'm planning a career change. I want to open my own school. First, I'm going back to college to do some management courses. I hope to learn about the business side of owning a school. Next, I'll look for a building. I already have two teachers who want to work for me: my parents!

8 Write a comment for the website about your childhood ambitions using the model. Answer the questions below.

1 What were your childhood ambitions?
2 What do you do now?
3 What do you hope to become in the future?



https://polcet.edu.vn

12.5 LOOKBACK

V FILM

1 A Complete the text with the words in the box.

studio	blockbuster	scene
opponent	setting	horror films

Dream of Ice is a thriller by director Li Wang. Famous for several [1]_____, here he leaves his usual monsters behind. The [2]_____ is Shanghai, 2150. The main character, Chuan, competes with his [3]_____, Oona, to find a box which contains a secret that can save the planet. In the best [4]_____, Oona chases Chuan through a city on a mechanical eagle. *Dream of Ice* is certain to become a summer [5]_____. In its opening week it made $220 million for the [6]_____.

B Work with other students. What recent films can you recommend?

G REPORTED SPEECH

2 A Put the first lines (1–3) and the last lines (4–6) from these classic films into reported speech.

1 '(Please, Sir,) I want some more.' (*Oliver*)
He said he …
2 'I believe in America.' (*The Godfather*)
He said he …
3 'The voice you hear is not my speaking voice, but my mind's voice.' (*The Piano*)
She said the voice we …
4 'I'm too old for this.' (*Lethal Weapon*)
He said he …
5 'It's a strange world … ' (*Blue Velvet*)
He said it …
6 'The Grand Hotel. Always the same. People come. People go … nothing ever happens.' (*Grand Hotel*)
He said The Grand Hotel was always the same. People …

B Work with other students. Do you know anything about the six films in Exercise 2A? Which have you heard of?

V SUFFIXES

3 A Complete the questions with the correct suffix.

1 What is the most danger____ thing you have ever done?
2 Have you been anywhere wonder____ recently? Where did you go?
3 When was the last time you had a family celebrat____? What was the reason?
4 Have you ever met someone fam____ ? Who?
5 Which would you prefer to be: a politic____ or a music____ ? Why?
6 Are you success____ in your work/studies? Why/Why not?

B Work in pairs and take turns. Ask and answer the questions.

G HYPOTHETICAL CONDITIONALS PRESENT/FUTURE

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

1 If I _____ (not have to) work tonight, I _____ (take) you out.
2 She _____ (be) very upset if I _____ (lose) her scarf.
3 If you _____ (be able to) do any job in the world, what _____ you _____ (choose)?
4 They _____ (be) ideal partners if they _____ (not argue) so much.
5 You _____ (not say) that if you _____ (know) more about it.
6 If I _____ (live) on a desert island, I _____ (be) perfectly happy.



5 Work in pairs. Play the consequences game. Student A: read and complete the first phrase. Student B: add another sentence, starting with the last consequence.

A: If I lived in Italy, I would eat more pasta.
B: If I ate more pasta, I would get fat.

1 If I lived until I was 200 years old, …
2 If I met a good-looking man/woman this evening, …
3 If I lived in a bigger house, …
4 If I had more time, …
5 If I had to get a new job, …
6 If I was a famous film star, …

F REQUESTS AND OFFERS

6 A Underline the correct alternative to complete the requests and offers.

1 Would it be possible *to see/see/seeing* the exhibition?
2 Would you like *buy/me buy/me to buy* a ticket for you?
3 Would you be *able for/able to/able* arrange dinner?
4 Could you *recommend/to recommend/recommending* a bar?
5 Shall *to call/I call/I call you* a taxi?
6 I'd *like to visit/like visit/like for visit* the museum.

B You have $50 million and a personal concierge. What would you like? Think of three things or choose from the box.

go shopping alone at midnight	
buy a private island	
hold a peace conference	
buy a painting	fly into space
meet your hero	
buy a famous building	

C Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: act out the role of client. Student B: act out the role of concierge.

A: What can I do for you, sir?
B: I'd like to buy a private island.
A: Whereabouts, sir?
B: In the Caribbean, I think.

https://polcet.edu.vn

IRREGULAR VERBS

Verb	Past simple	Past participle
be	was	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bite	bit	bitten
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
burn	burned/burnt	burned/burnt
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
deal	dealt	dealt
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamed/dreamt	dreamed/dreamt
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
forgive	forgave	forgiven
freeze	froze	frozen
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
learn	learned/learnt	learned/learnt

Verb	Past simple	Past participle
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
set	set	set
shake	shook	shaken
shine	shone	shone
show	showed	shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
smell	smelled/smelt	smelled/smelt
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
spell	spelt	spelt
spill	spilled/spilt	spilled/spilt
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

https://polcet.edu.vn

1 LANGUAGE BANK

GRAMMAR

1.1 question forms

Yes/No questions are questions that only require a *Yes* or *No* answer.

For questions in the present and past simple, put the auxiliary *do/does/did* before the subject.

***A:** Does he live here?* ***B:** Yes, he does.*

For questions with *be*, put *be* before the subject.

***A:** Is he married?* ***B:** No, he isn't.*

Wh- questions are questions which ask for more than a *Yes/No* answer. Use the same word order as *Yes/No* questions.

question word	auxiliary *do/does/did*	subject	infinitive
Where	does	he	live?
When	do	you	see your parents?
Why	did	they	phone me?

question word	*be*	subject	adj/noun/verb + *-ing*, etc.
Why	are	you	sad?
What	is	he	doing?

Use *who* for people. ***Who** is your boss?*
Use *where* for places. ***Where** is the bathroom?*
Use *what* or *which* for things.
***What** music do you like?*
***Which** do you prefer, football or rugby?*
Use *when* for time. ***When** do you want to meet?*
Use *how often* for frequency.
***How often** do you go to English lessons?*
Use *how long* for length of time/distance.
***How long** does the lesson last?*
Use *how much/many* for quantity.
***How much** does this cost?*
***How many** brothers do you have?*
Use *why* for reasons. ***Why** are you studying English?*
Use *what time* for a time. ***What time** do you start work?*

Note:

Which has a limited number of possible answers.
***Which** do you want, the red or the blue jumper?*
What has a large number of possible answers.
***What** music do you like?*

1.2 past simple

past simple regular verbs				
+		I/you/ he/she/it/ we/they	worked	in a restaurant.
–			didn't work	
?	Did		work	in a restaurant?

past simple irregular verbs				
+		I/you/ he/she/it/ we/they	went	out.
–			didn't go	
?	Did		go	out?

Use the past simple to talk about finished actions in the past.
In negatives and questions, use the auxiliary *did* + infinitive.
Do not use *did* in negatives and questions with the verb *be*.
I wasn't very happy. NOT *I ~~didn't be~~ happy.*

spellings: regular past simple verbs		
verbs ending in:	**rule**	**example**
	+ -ed	start – started
-e	*+ -d*	live – lived
-y	*-y + -i + -ed*	marry – married
consonant-vowel-consonant	double the consonant *+ -ed*	stop – stopped

Form the past simple with regular verbs by adding *-ed*.
Many common verbs have an irregular past simple form. Look at the list on page 127.
Use the past simple to talk about finished actions in the past.

1.3 making conversation

making conversation	response
This is my friend (name).	Hi (name). Pleased to meet you.
Would you like a drink?	I'd love a coffee, thank you.
Nice day, isn't it?	Yes, it's lovely.
Where exactly do you come from?	I come from …, near …
So, do you work here?	No, I'm a student.
Did you have a good weekend?	Yes, it was OK. I didn't do much.
Did you watch the match last night?	Yes, it was terrible.
We lost 3-0.	Oh no! I'm sorry to hear that.
I'll see you later.	See you soon.

https://polcet.edu.vn

PRACTICE

1.1

A **Complete the questions. How many can you answer?**

1 _____ states are there in the USA?
2 _____ was the first person to walk on the Moon?
3 _____ is the largest island in the Mediterranean Sea?
4 _____ is H_2O?
5 _____ did the Berlin Wall come down?
6 _____ is Lake Wanaka?
7 _____ country is famous for samba?
8 _____ long is the River Nile?

B **Match questions 1–8 in Exercise 1.1A with answers a)–h).**

a) Brazil
b) Neil Armstrong
c) 9 November 1989
d) in New Zealand
e) 50
f) water
g) 6,695 km
h) Sicily

C **Find and correct the mistakes. There is a mistake in each sentence.**

1 How much this cost?
2 You have any brothers or sisters?
3 What time starts the film?
4 How often do you playing football?
5 Who your new teacher is?
6 Do want you to come and have a pizza?
7 Why don't you liking grammar?
8 Where you go on holiday last year?

1.2

A **Complete the story with the correct form of the verbs in the box. Use the past simple.**

~~ask~~ (x2)	email	say	get (x2)	arrive	see
know	fall	decide			

A single father-of-two [1] *asked* his American girlfriend to marry him only four minutes after he [2]_____ her for the first time.

Carl Dockings, 36, from Wales, met Danielle on the internet.

'We [3]_____ on so well. We always [4]_____ what the other was thinking.' He said they [5]_____ and talked in chat rooms. They [6]_____ in love even before exchanging pictures.

After ten months, Carl [7]_____ to fly 4,000 miles to meet Danielle in person. He [8]_____ the important question at Chicago's O'Hare Airport soon after he [9]_____.

The 26-year-old [10]_____ 'yes' and the couple [11]_____ married four months later.

They now live in his home city with their daughter Isabel.

B **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the past simple.**

1 My grandfather _____ (teach) me how to paint.
2 Where _____ you _____ (grow up)?
3 We _____ (meet) in Ireland last year.
4 At first we _____ (not get on) very well.
5 I _____ (leave) college and _____ (get) a job in an office.
6 I _____ (live) in the USA, so we _____ (not see) each other for six months.
7 _____ you _____ (enjoy) the concert last night?
8 They _____ (not have) children.
9 My sister _____ (finish) her degree last year.
10 She _____ (study) Russian.

1.3

A **Find and correct the mistakes. There is a mistake or missing word in each sentence.**

1 This is ~~the~~ *my* friend, Sara.
2 Hi. Pleased to know you.
3 Do you like a drink?
4 Where exact do you come from?
5 Did you have good weekend?
6 I see you later.

B **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1 meet / to / you / pleased
2 coffee / would / I / a / love
3 do / what / so / you / do?
4 I / you / see / 'll / later
5 come / where / do / from / exactly / you?
6 soon / see / you

https://polcet.edu.vn

2 LANGUAGE BANK

GRAMMAR

2.1 present simple and continuous

	present simple	present continuous
+	I work at home. He watches TV.	I'm working at home. He's watching TV.
–	She doesn't study now. We don't text in class.	She isn't studying now. We're not texting in class.
?	Does he live with you? Where do the workers have lunch?	Is he living with you? Where are the workers having lunch?

Use the present simple to describe something that is always or generally true.

It is common to use these words with the present simple: *sometimes*, *usually*, *every day*, *often*.

I usually get up at 7a.m.

Use the present continuous to talk about:

- an activity happening right now, at the time of speaking.
- a temporary activity happening around now (maybe at the moment, but maybe not).

spelling with *-ing* forms		
verbs ending in:	**rule**	**example**
-e	~~*-e*~~ + *-ing*	take – taking
vowel + consonant	double the consonant + *-ing*	run – running
-ie	~~*-ie*~~ + *-y*	die – dying
-y	+ *-ing*	study – studying

Form the present continuous with the verb *be* + the *-ing* form of the verb.

It is common to use these words with the present continuous: *now*, *at the moment*, *currently*, *this month*.

I'm living with my parents at the moment.

Some verbs are not usually used with continuous tenses: *be*, *know*, *like*, *love*, *understand*, *want*, etc. These are called 'state verbs'.

I want to go to bed now. NOT
I ~~am wanting~~ to go to bed now.

2.2 adverbs of frequency

Use adverbs of frequency to say how frequently you do something. Some of the most common are: *never*, *rarely*, *occasionally*, *sometimes*, *often*, *usually*, *always*.

There are several adverbial phrases of frequency, e.g. *hardly ever*, *once in a while*, *every day/month/year*.

With *be*, put the adverb **after** the verb.

*I **am always** here.*
*They **were usually** early.*

We usually put the adverb **before** other verbs.

*I **sometimes spoke** to him.*
*We **hardly ever ate** there.*

With auxiliary or modal verbs, we usually put the adverb **after** the auxiliary or modal.

She doesn't stay here. → *She doesn't **usually** stay here.*
We haven't visited them. → *We have **never** visited them.*
I can help. → *I can **always** help.*

Adverbs of frequency can also go at the beginning, middle or end of a sentence.

***Occasionally** I go dancing.*
*I **occasionally** go dancing.*
*I go dancing **occasionally**.*

Always and *never* do not normally go at the beginning or end of sentences.

Once in a while and *every day/month/year* usually go at the beginning or end of sentences.

There are other phrases to show how frequently something happens:

every day = one time per day *I have a shower every day.*
once a week = one time per week
She writes to me once a week.
twice a week = two times per week
They go shopping twice a week.

2.3 expressing likes/dislikes

There are a number of verbs and other phrases to show likes and dislikes. After these verbs and phrases, we usually use the *-ing* form.

positive
I **like** sing**ing**/meat. I **absolutely love** swimm**ing**/tennis. I'**m keen on** runn**ing**/beach holidays.

negative
I **can't stand** smok**ing**/computers. I **don't like** work**ing**/rock music. I **hate** watch**ing** TV/films. I'**m not very keen on** work**ing**/fruit.

Note: We can also use *like* + infinitive.

Like + infinitive means 'do as a habit' or 'choose to do'.

*I **like** to go to bed early.*

Note: *I don't mind* means 'It's OK for me. I don't like it or dislike it'.

*I **don't mind** sleeping on the floor.*

https://polcet.edu.vn

PRACTICE

2.1

A Complete the conversations with the correct form of the verbs in the box. Use the present simple or present continuous.

eat	be	wait	know	work	wear	play

1 **A:** It takes him ten minutes to get to work.
B: I know. His house _____ far from the office.
2 **A:** Isn't your son an actor?
B: Yes, but at the moment he _____ in a restaurant.
3 **A:** What is all that noise? I'm trying to work!
B: I _____ with the children.
4 **A:** What _____ you _____ about the new software program?
B: The new software program? Absolutely nothing.
5 **A:** Why _____ you _____ that jacket in the office? It's really warm!
B: Because I'm cold!
6 **A:** Would you like some beef?
B: No, thanks. I _____ meat. I'm a vegetarian.
7 **A:** Why are you standing there?
B: I _____ for a taxi.

B Find and correct the mistakes. There is a mistake in five of the sentences.

1 John works in sales and he is going to the office every day at 8a.m.
2 The new employee says she's eighteen, but I'm not believing it.
3 At the moment, I'm doing a task for my boss.
4 Don't buy a bottle of wine for her. She isn't drinking alcohol.
5 I can't speak Chinese, but my friend teaches me.
6 Excuse me, is anybody sitting here?
7 I'm taking art classes this term.
8 Hey! What do you do with that knife?

2.2

A Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1 I / dinner / at / weekend / cook / sometimes / the
I sometimes cook dinner at the weekend.
2 once / I / while / go / in / swimming / a
3 I / money / waste / never / my
4 Najim / often / tennis / play / doesn't
5 Akiko and Toshi / evening / stay / usually / the / home / at / in
6 why / late / are / always / you?
7 I / work / Fridays / rarely / late / on
8 Mary / ever / hardly / deals / with / customers
9 occasionally / a / team / work / I / in

B Underline the correct alternative.

1 *Always/Usually/Hardly ever* our IT consultant deals with these problems; it's his job.
2 I get up early *never/rarely/every day* and go to work at 6a.m.
3 You *sometimes/every week/once in a while* need to risk your life in this job.
4 We *often/never/rarely* see each other – maybe once a year.
5 We *occasionally/always/rarely* work under pressure; we never have a chance to relax.
6 *Often/Hardly ever/Once in a while* I speak to my boss – maybe once a month.
7 We have a summer party *every year/always/never*.
8 I deal with customers *rarely/often/occasionally*, but only if my boss is out.

2.3

A Complete the sentences with one word.

1 I like _____ to music while I study. It helps me concentrate.
2 I _____ mind getting up early for my job. It's no problem for me.
3 Stefania is keen _____ travelling so she's studying tourism.
4 Mick _____ like talking to customers. He says it's boring.
5 Lorenzo absolutely_____ dancing. He's really good at samba.
6 I can't _____ working at the weekend.

https://polcet.edu.vn

3 LANGUAGE BANK

GRAMMAR

3.1 present continuous/*be going to* for future

present continuous					
+		I	'm	spending	the day with my grandmother on Saturday.
–		We	're not	playing	football this evening.
?	What	are	you	doing	at the weekend?

It is common to use the present continuous to talk about things happening now or temporary situations. It is also possible to use the present continuous to talk about definite future plans and arrangements.

It is common to use an expression of future time with the present continuous, e.g. *this weekend*, *tomorrow morning*, *later*.

be going to					
+		I	'm going to	take	some time off work.
–		They	're not going to	win.	
?	Is	it	going to	rain?	

Use *be going to* + infinitive to talk about future plans and predictions.

Usually, we can use both the present continuous and *be going to* to talk about plans.

*I'**m meeting** my girlfriend later.*
*I'**m going to meet** my girlfriend later.*

But there is a small difference:

For plans which involve other people and have a fixed time and place, the present continuous is more common.

*We'**re having** a barbecue on Saturday.* (We have invited people, bought food and drink, etc.)

For plans which do not involve other people, *be going to* is more common.

*I'**m going to stay in** and read a book.*

When *be going to* is followed by the verb *go*, it is possible to omit *go to*.

*I'**m going to** (go to) the cinema.*

3.2 questions without auxiliaries

subject	verb		answer
Who	sent	the present?	David.
What	causes	this problem?	The water pipes.
Whose guitar	cost	$300?	Mine.
Which footballers	played	for that team?	Beckham and Cole.

When *who*, *what*, *which* or *whose* is the **subject** of the sentence, do not use an auxiliary verb (*do*, *did*, etc.). The verb is in the third person.

***Who** ate all the pies? **Joe** ate all the pies.*
***Which** students forgot their homework? **Ben and Meg** forgot their homework.*

When *who*, *what*, *which* or *whose* is the object of the sentence, use an auxiliary verb as usual.

*What **do** you do? **I** work in a bank.*
*Whose book **did** you use? **I** used Tom's book.*

3.3 making a phone call

caller	
start the call	Hello, this is Andy. Hello, it's Wendy. (NOT ~~I am Wendy.~~)
ask to speak to someone	Can I speak to …?
when the person you want isn't there	Can I leave a message?
finish the call	See you soon. Goodbye.

receiver	
start the call	Hello. Paul speaking.*
find out who is speaking	Who's calling (please)?
when the person the caller wants isn't there	I'm afraid she's not here at the moment. Can I take a message? I'll ask her to call you back.
finish the call	Thanks for calling.

*We say this when we answer the phone at work.

https://polcet.edu.vn

PRACTICE

3.1

A Match prompts 1–4 with pictures A–D.

1 play / football
2 stay home / watch TV
3 go / cinema
4 have / meeting

B Look at the pictures and make sentences with the prompts. Use the present continuous.



Next week



This evening



Saturday



Next weekend

C Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the present continuous or *be going to*.

A: What [1]_____ you _____ (do) tonight?
B: I [2]_____ (go) John's house party.
A: Really? We [3]_____ (be) there, too.
B: Great! [4]_____ you _____ (take) any food or drink?
A: Yes, we [5]_____ (bring) some food, but we [6]_____ (not bring) drink.
B: What type of music [7]_____ he _____ (have)?
A: He's got a DJ and he [8]_____ (play) dance music.
B: It sounds great. How [9]_____ you _____ (get) there?
A: We [10]_____ (drive). Do you want a lift?

3.2

A Find and correct the mistakes. There is a mistake in five of the questions.

1 Do you like reading?
2 Who does read the most in your family?
3 Who be your favourite writer?
4 Which books have become famous recently?
5 What did be your favourite book when you were a child?
6 Who did write it?
7 How often you read on the internet?
8 Where and when do you like to read?

B Make questions with the prompts. Use the past simple. One question needs an auxiliary verb.

1 What colour / be / The Beatles' / submarine?
2 Who / write / *Stairway to Heaven*?
3 Whose / home / be / Graceland?
4 Which country / Diego Rivera / come from?
5 Who / paint / the *Mona Lisa*?
6 Which painter / invent / Cubism?

3.3

A Put the words in the correct order to make a phone conversation.

A: speaking / David
B: it's / Johnson / hello / Mark
A: can / Mr / help / how / I / you / Johnson?
B: to / like / Sara / please / I'd / to / speak / Torres
A: the / afraid / here / I'm / she's / moment / not / at
B: a / leave / I / can / message?
A: course / of / yes
B: you / me / her / can / ask / call / to / back?
A: problem / no
B: number / 0276 765356 / is / my
A: repeat / you / that / can / please?
B: 0276 765356
A: calling / thanks / OK / for
B: Bye

https://polcet.edu.vn

4 LANGUAGE BANK

GRAMMAR

4.1 present perfect + *ever/never*

present perfect: positive and negative				
+	I/You/We/They	have ('ve)	finished	the project.
	He/She/It	has ('s)		
–	I/You/We/They	haven't/(have never)	visited	Mexico.
	He/She/It	hasn't/(has never)		

present perfect: questions				short answers		
Have	I/you/ we/they	(ever) played	chess?	Yes,	I/you/ we/they	have.
				No,		haven't.
Has	he/she/it			Yes,	he/she/it	has.
				No,		hasn't.

Form the present perfect with *have/has* + past participle.

The past participle is verb + *-ed* for regular verbs. For a list of irregular verbs, see page 127.

Use the present perfect to talk about past experiences without saying an exact time.

*I **'ve been** to Warsaw.*

When we want to say an exact time, we use the past simple.

*I **went** to Warsaw in 2007.*

Use *ever* with the present perfect to mean 'during your life until now'. *Never* is the negative of *ever.*

*Have you **ever** visited Madrid?*
*She's **never** been to a nightclub.*

Spoken grammar 1: When we are asked a *Have you ever …?* question, we often reply: *No, never* instead of *No, I haven't.*

***A:** Have you ever been to the Maldives?*
***B:** No, never.*

Spoken grammar 2: When we want to repeat the same *Have you ever …?* question, we usually say *Have you?*

***A:** Have you ever been to Zurich?*
***B:** No, have you?*

4.2 *can, have to, must*

Use modal verbs *can/can't, have to/don't have to, must/mustn't* to talk about present obligation.

Use *can* to talk about something which is possible/allowed.

*You **can** use dictionaries during the exam.*

Use *can't* to talk about something which is not possible/allowed.

*You **can't** park here.*

Use *must/mustn't/have to* to talk about rules or things that are necessary.

*We **have to** study for our exam.*
*You **must** return the books to the library before Friday.*
*You **mustn't** chew gum in the classroom.*

Use *don't have to* to talk about something that is not necessary (but it is possible/allowed).

We don't have to be there until eight o'clock. (But we can get there earlier if we want to.)

Use *he/she has to* in the positive, and *he/she doesn't have to* in the negative.

*She **has to** pay for the exam.*
*He **doesn't have to** do any extra work.*

4.3 giving/responding to advice

phrases for giving advice	example
I think you should …	I think you should study more.
You should …	You should hear her play the trumpet.
You shouldn't …	You shouldn't be late all the time.
Why don't you …?	Why don't you finish your homework later?
I (don't) think it's a good idea to …	I think it's a good idea to take some lessons.
Find/Write …	Find a cheap hotel on the internet.

phrases for responding to advice
That's a good idea.
I suppose so.
You're right.
I'm not sure that's a good idea.

https://polcet.edu.vn

PRACTICE

4.1

A **Find and correct the mistakes. There is one mistake in each sentence.**

1 Have you ever saw the film *Titanic*?
2 Two days ago she's been to a museum.
3 Unfortunately, we have ever won the lottery.
4 Has ever she visited you?
5 I haven't meet your brother.
6 In 2011, they've travelled to Geneva.
7 Have you seen that TV programme last Wednesday?
8 He never has played a musical instrument.

B **Complete the conversations with the correct form of the verbs in the box. Use the past simple or present perfect.**

make	eat	visit	hear	do	work

Conversation 1
A: _____ (ever) business in China?
B: Yes, I have. I did business there in 2014.

Conversation 2
A: Peter Duvall is a diplomat, isn't he?
B: Yes, he _____ all over the world.

Conversation 3
A: She loves travelling, doesn't she?
B: Yes, she _____ fifteen countries last year.

Conversation 4
A: _____ many speeches?
B: No, he hasn't. That's why I'm worried.

Conversation 5
A: Is Coldplay's new CD good?
B: I don't know. I _____ it.

Conversation 6
A: Have you ever tried sushi?
B: Yes, we _____ some yesterday!

4.2

A **Underline the correct alternative.**

1 We *have to/has to* get up early to catch the train.
2 Children *can't/can* stay with their parents if they are very quiet.
3 I'm afraid I *can't/must* leave work early. It's not allowed.
4 They *have to/don't have to* put a notice on the door so you know which room to go to.
5 You *can/don't have to* park your car here. It's free on Saturdays.
6 You *mustn't/have to* smoke in the office. It's against the law.
7 You *can't/have to* leave your coat on the floor. Hang it up!
8 We *must/don't have to* worry about transport. A taxi will take us to the airport.

B **Complete the sentences with *can/can't, have to/don't have to* or *must/mustn't*.**

1 You _____ leave the room when you have finished the exam. (it's allowed)
2 We _____ book a table. That restaurant is never busy on Mondays. (it's not necessary)
3 You _____ log in using your PIN number. (it's necessary)
4 You _____ eat as much as you like. (it's allowed)
5 Sadie _____ bring extra clothes. I have got lots here. (it's not necessary)
6 You _____ wear jeans in the nightclub. (it's not allowed)
7 Harry _____ work on his pronunciation. (it's necessary)
8 You _____ do that. It's illegal! (it's not allowed)

4.3

A **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

a) a / idea / that's / good
b) think / I / out / after / lesson / go / should / the / we
c) not / I'm / sure / I / much money / haven't got / because
d) for / we / a / out / meal / why / go / don't ?
e) OK / to / Butler's Café / let's / coffee / a / for / go

B **Put sentences a)–e) in the correct order to make a conversation.**

https://polcet.edu.vn

5 LANGUAGE BANK

GRAMMAR

5.1 past simple and past continuous

	past simple	past continuous
+	I watched a film yesterday.	I was watching a film yesterday.
–	He didn't play here.	He wasn't playing here.
?	Did you talk to John?	Were you talking to John?

Use the past simple to talk about completed actions.
*I **ate** a salad last night.*
Use the past continuous to talk about actions in progress at a particular time.
*At 8a.m. yesterday I **was travelling** to work.*

I was sleeping → → → → → → →
11p.m. *the thief entered (3a.m.)*
past — present

It is common to use the past simple and the past continuous together to tell stories. The past continuous describes an action that starts first, but is interrupted by a second action. Use the past simple for the second (usually short) action.
*What **were** you **doing** when the bus **crashed**?*
*I **was sleeping** when the thief **entered** the house.*
It is common to use *when* or *while* to link the two actions. Use *while* before the continuous action.
***While** I was sleeping, it started to rain.*
Use *when* before the continuous action or the short action.
***When** we **were talking**, the bus appeared.*
*We **were talking** when the bus **appeared**.*
Do NOT use *while* before the short action.
I was sleeping ~~while~~ it started to rain.

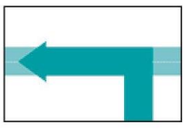
5.2 verb patterns

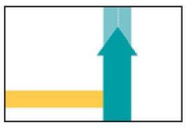
Sometimes we use two verbs together.
*I **love playing** football.*
After some verbs, put the second verb in the infinitive with *to*.
*She decided **to go** to Mexico.*
*We need **to make** a phone call.*
After some verbs, use the *-ing* form.
*I enjoy runn**ing**.*
*They avoided travell**ing** by bus.*

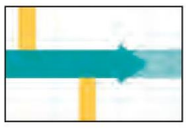
some common verb patterns	
verb + *-ing*	**verb + infinitive with *to***
enjoy	choose
finish	hope
avoid	expect
imagine	would like
stop	decide
like	seem
don't mind	want
spend (time)	need
	help
	promise

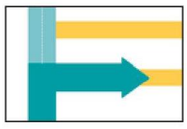
Many verbs that show preference (things that we like or don't like) are followed by *-ing*, e.g. *like*, *enjoy*, *don't mind*.
After some verbs it is possible to use the *-ing* form OR the infinitive with *to*, e.g. *love*, *hate*.
*I love **dancing**. I love **to dance**.*
*I hate **getting up** early. I hate **to get up** early.*
There is little change in meaning.

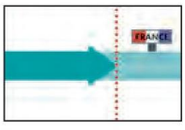
5.3 asking for/giving directions


go left


go past the turning

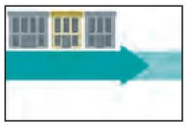

go along the main road

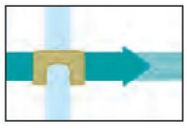

take the first right

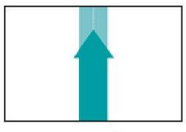


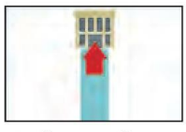
keep going until you reach …


at the corner


go through the centre


cross a bridge


go straight on


in front of you

useful questions	directions	saying you understand
Can we walk? Excuse me, can you help me? Is this the right way? Can you show me on the map? Is it far?	It takes about twenty minutes. Keep going … You'll see … You can't miss it.	OK, so I need to … Right.

https://polcet.edu.vn

PRACTICE

5.1

A Complete the story with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use the past simple or past continuous.

Alvin Straight, a 73-year-old, [1]_____ (live) quietly on his farm in Iowa, USA, when he heard the news that his brother, Lyle, was seriously ill. After ten years with no contact between the brothers, Alvin [2]_____ (decide) to visit Lyle. Alvin couldn't drive so he [3]_____ (buy) a lawnmower, which moved at five miles per hour, and [4]_____ (begin) the 250-mile-journey.

While he [5]_____ (travel), he met many people, including a priest and a teenage girl who was running away from her family. He helped them all simply by talking about life. Some of them also [6]_____ (help) him. For example, one day when he [7]_____ (drive) the lawnmower, it broke down. While two mechanics [8]_____ (fix) it, he met a friendly couple and [9]_____ (stay) with them.

The journey took him six weeks. And [10]_____ the story _____ (end) happily? See the 1999 film, *The Straight Story*, to find out!

B Make sentences with the prompts and the correct form of the verbs in the box. Use the past simple or past continuous.

pass	know	like	play	dance	swim	travel	have

1 He / tennis when he hurt his leg.
2 Sarah / the job because it was boring.
3 While they / they met lots of other tourists.
4 How / you / my name?
5 Who / you / with in that nightclub when I saw you?
6 I / in the sea when I saw the shark.
7 I / my exam?
8 The thief broke in while Jack / breakfast.

5.2

A Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

live	read	drink	swim	visit	have	play	finish

1 They want _____ the monuments tomorrow morning.
2 I can't imagine _____ in that flat – it's so small!
3 I don't like _____ water from a bottle.
4 They decided _____ football this morning.
5 Would you like _____ dinner in this restaurant?
6 Do you enjoy _____ in the sea?
7 I hope _____ my degree next year.
8 I love _____ books about adventures.

B Find and correct the mistakes. There are eight mistakes in the advertisement.



* **Are modern holidays too boring for you?**
* **Would you like doing something more exciting?**

Mad Dog Tours is perfect for people who hate spend time asleep on a beach. If you enjoy to travel to strange places, if you don't mind to stay in cheap hotels and want knowing how the local people really live, we promise helping you. Cheap holidays are our speciality. If you choose booking your holiday with *Mad Dog Tours*, you can expect living your dreams!

5.3

A Match 1–10 with a)–j) to make sentences or questions.

1 Excuse me, can	**a)** about an hour.
2 Is this the	**b)** need to go left here.
3 Is	**c)** restaurant on your right.
4 Can you show	**d)** it far?
5 It takes	**e)** right way?
6 You can't	**f)** going.
7 Can we	**g)** me on the map?
8 So I	**h)** you help me?
9 You'll see the	**i)** walk?
10 Keep	**j)** miss it.

B Underline the correct alternative to complete the conversations.

Conversation 1

A: Excuse me, how do I get to the swimming pool?

B: You need to go [1]*along/at/with* the main road. Keep going until you [2]*go/have/reach* the town hall. Then [3]*go/make/be* left and it's [4]*the/in/to* front of you.

Conversation 2

A: Excuse me, is this the right way to the Bach Concert Hall?

B: No, you need to turn around, then [5]*do/cross/go* the bridge. After that, you [6]*have/are/take* the first right and go [7]*at/with/through* the centre of town. The concert hall is at the [8]*first/corner/cross* of Ducane Road and Bright Street.

https://polcet.edu.vn

6 LANGUAGE BANK

GRAMMAR

6.1 present perfect + *for/since*

Use the present perfect to talk about things that started in the past and are still true now.

*We **'ve been married** for fourteen years.*

(We got married fourteen years ago and we are still married now.)

Use *since* to talk about the specific time something started, e.g. *1992, last week, Monday, I was a child.*

*We **'ve known** each other **since** we were children.*

(We are friends now.)

*He **has played** football **since** 2002.*

Use *for* to talk about a period (length) of time, e.g. *ten years, two months, a long time, an hour, a few weeks.*

*I **haven't seen** him **for** a few weeks.*

*I **'ve lived** in Barcelona **for** twenty-five years.*

To ask about the length of time, use *How long have you …?*

***How long have you worked** for Dell?*

Use the past simple, not the present perfect, for things which happened at a specific time in the past.

*I **moved** to Spain in 2001.* NOT

I ~~have~~ moved to Spain in 2001.

6.2 *may, might, will*

Use *may/might* + infinitive to talk about probable situations.

We also use *may/might* + infinitive to talk about future possibilities.

*I **might go** to the party.*

*They **might** not **arrive** today.*

*We **may have** some problems.*

*She **may** not **like** the dress.*

Do not use contractions with *might not* and *may not*.

The question form with *might* is rare.

The question form with *may* is used for asking permission. It is a very polite form.

***May** I **sit** here?*

***May** I **open** the window?*

Use *will* + infinitive to talk about a future prediction.

The negative of *will* is *won't* (or *will not*).

*I **will be** home at 9p.m. tonight.*

*She **won't come** here tomorrow.*

***Will** they **win** the match?*

In spoken English, use the contracted form of *will ('ll)* in positive sentences. Do not use it in questions.

*I**'ll** be home at 9p.m. tonight.*

It is common to use *think/don't think* + *will*.

*I **think** she**'ll** get the job.*

*I **don't think** I**'ll** go to university next year.*

6.3 seeing the doctor

doctor
What's the matter/problem?
How long have you had this problem?
Where does it hurt?
Can I have a look (at …)?
It's nothing to worry about.
I'll give you some pills/antibiotics/medicine.

patient
I feel sick/terrible.
I can't sleep.
I'm worried about …
It hurts when I walk/talk.
It's very painful.



https://polcet.edu.vn

PRACTICE

6.1

A Underline the correct alternative.

1 I *didn't do/haven't done* much work *for/since* my boss left.
2 I *didn't go/haven't been* to China *for/since* 2010.
3 She *has been/was* a doctor *for/since* more than forty years. She retired in 2012.
4 Hi, Angela. How are you? I *haven't seen/didn't see* you *for/since* ages.
5 I *left/have left* university in 2000. I've worked in this company *for/since* about fifteen years.
6 I *didn't see/haven't seen* Sam yesterday. In fact I *didn't see/haven't seen* him *for/since* Monday.
7 He's really tired. He hasn't stopped working *for/since* 5.30a.m.
8 She *hasn't driven/didn't drive* a car *for/since* she had the accident.

B Complete the sentences with *for* or *since*. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the present perfect or past simple.

1 I've lived in this city _____ 2011. I _____ (come) here with my family.
2 I _____ (buy) this house in 2005, so I _____ (live) here _____ more than ten years.
3 I _____ (know) Marissa _____ a long time. We _____(meet) in 1998.
4 They _____ (move) to Australia last December, so they _____ (be) there _____ nearly a year.
5 We _____ (not be) back to Russia _____ 1990.
6 He _____ (not see) his father _____ he left home.
7 I've been learning English _____ I _____ (start) school.
8 She _____ (have) that car _____ ages!

6.2

A Match statements 1–6 with responses a)–f).

1 I'm hungry because I missed breakfast.
2 You eat too much junk food.
3 I'm just going out to get a snack.
4 The film was really good.
5 She looks a bit stressed.
6 We want to visit the museum this afternoon.

a) I won't be long.
b) I think she'll need a holiday soon.
c) We may not have time.
d) You might get fat.
e) I may have an early lunch.
f) I think my father might enjoy it.

B Find and correct the mistakes. There is a mistake in each sentence.

1 I don't will know my exam results until August.
2 Will you to go to university next year?
3 Anna is very busy so she may not comes tonight.
4 The traffic is heavy so they may to be late.
5 Edson mights be the best player we have ever seen.
6 I might go not to the exercise class today.
7 We'll to be back at 6p.m.

6.3

A Complete the conversation with phrases from the boxes on page 138.

Doctor: Good morning. I'm Dr Gordon. [1]_____ _____ _____?
Patient: [2]_____ _____ _____. I've got a sore throat, and a cough.
Doctor: [3]_____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____?
Patient: About a week.
Doctor: Have you got a temperature?
Patient: Yes, I think so.
Doctor: [4]_____ _____ _____ _____ _____ at your throat?
Patient: Yes. It's [5]_____ _____. [6]_____ _____ when I talk.
Doctor: Right. [7]_____ _____ _____ some medicine. Take this for one week, and if you don't feel better, come back to see me again.
Patient: Thank you.

https://polcet.edu.vn

7 LANGUAGE BANK

GRAMMAR

7.1 *used to*

		subject	*used to*	infinitive	
+		I, you, he/she/it, we, they	used to	go	to the cinema every Saturday.
–			didn't use to never used to	go	on holiday.
?	Did	you	use to	work	hard?

Note: Notice the spelling of *use to* in the negative and question form.

*We **didn't use to** live in a big house.* NOT
We didn't ~~used to~~ live …
***Did** you **use to** play a lot of football?* NOT
Did you ~~used to~~ play …?

Use *used to* to talk about a past habit or situation which is not the same now.

*We **used to** live in London. (But now we live in Warsaw.)*
*I **used to** play a lot of tennis. (But I don't play any more.)*

It is possible to use the past simple instead of *used to*.

*I **used to go** out a lot. = I **went** out a lot.*

It is not possible to use *used to* to talk about something which happened just once or at a specific time. For this, use the past simple.

We moved in 2002. NOT *We ~~used to~~ move in 2002.*

It is not possible to use *used to* to talk about the present.

I usually eat at home. NOT *I ~~used to~~ eat at home.*

The negative of *used to* is *didn't use to*. In spoken English, *never used to* is more common.

*They **never used to** worry about money.*
*We **never used to** eat chocolate.*

7.2 purpose, cause and result

Use the infinitive with *to* to talk about the reason or purpose for an action.

*I went to the shop **to buy** some milk.*

Note: It is not possible to say ~~*for to buy*~~ some milk.

It is also possible to use *in order (not)* + infinitive with *to*.

*He came to class **in order** to learn English.*
*They came back early **in order not** to miss the party.*

It is also possible to use *so that* + subject + verb.

*I'll cook **so that** you can relax.*

Use *because* + subject + verb to talk about a cause.

*I left work **because** I hated the job.*
***Because** we don't eat meat, we buy a lot of fish.*

Use *so* + subject + verb to talk about the result of an action.

*It rained **so** we went inside.*
*I forgot my wallet **so** I didn't have any money.*

7.3 finding out information

getting attention	asking for information	thanking someone
Excuse me, … Could you help me? Can you tell me …?	Where can I get/find/buy …? When can I use/start …? What time is the library open? What time do the lessons start? Can I …? Do I have to …? Is it free/open/near? I need to find out about/speak to …	Thank you so much. That's very kind.

https://polcet.edu.vn

PRACTICE

7.1

A Complete the sentences with *used to/didn't use to* and the words in brackets.

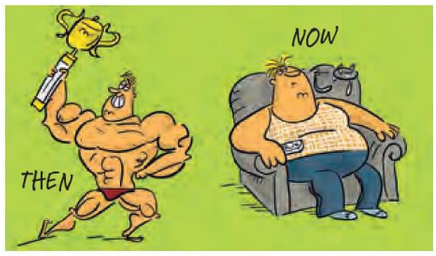
1 I _____ (study) hard when I was at school so I always passed my exams.
2 He _____ (smoke) before he got ill, but he had to give up.
3 We _____ (never/argue), but now we argue all the time.
4 They _____ (live) in the city, but now they have moved to the sea.
5 I _____ (not/like) eating mushrooms, but now I love them!
6 _____ you _____ (enjoy) working in an office?
7 She _____ (go out) with Steve, but now she has met someone else.
8 I _____ (do) a lot of cooking, but now I don't have time.

B Look at the pictures. How have things changed? Complete the sentences.

1 He _____ have long hair. Now it's short.
2 He _____ drive a car. He rode a motorbike when he was younger.
3 He _____ wear a leather jacket. Now he wears a suit.



4 He _____ do a lot of sport.
5 He _____ win competitions.
6 He _____ be fat.



7 He _____ work as an actor. Now he's a politician.
8 He _____ not _____ be interested in politics.



7.2

A Complete the sentences with *so*, *to* or *because*.

1 She took the job _____ make some money.
2 The company became successful _____ it had brilliant sales reps.
3 I became a doctor _____ cure people of their illnesses.
4 They treated her badly _____ she left the company.
5 Put the key in your pocket _____ you don't lose it.
6 You need to work hard _____ pass your exams.
7 He spent twenty years in prison _____ he killed a man.
8 I have been at this school for ten years _____ I know all the teachers.

B There are eight words missing from the text. Complete the text with *so*, *to* or *because*.

I usually get a newspaper I want to know what's on TV, but today I read a strange story. An Englishman was feeling terrible he was under pressure at work, he decided to disappear. He went to a beach go swimming (he said). Then he left his clothes there that someone could find them. He also left his wallet with a photo and ID the police knew who it was. The police went to his home speak to him, but he wasn't there. He was in Australia and had a different name! Three years later, he was caught when his cousin, who was in Australia attend a conference, recognised him. Where were they? On a beach!

7.3

A Find and correct the mistakes. There is an extra word in each line.

Conversation 1

A: Excuse me. Can you tell me where to can find a post office?
B: Yes, there's one just behind of you!

Conversation 2

A: I need to be find out about my accommodation.
B: There's an accommodation office on downstairs.

Conversation 3

A: Breakfast is in the restaurant from on 7 o'clock.
B: Sorry? Did you to say 7 o'clock?

Conversation 4

A: Do you is know where the main reception is?
B: Yes, I'll show it you.
A: That's you very kind.

Conversation 5

A: Is it a free to park my car here?
B: No, it's you have to pay.

https://polcet.edu.vn

8 LANGUAGE BANK

GRAMMAR

8.1 relative clauses

Use relative clauses to talk about what a person, place, or thing is (or does).

*This is the machine **which we used to make the copies**.*
*He's the man **who helped us**.*

Also use relative clauses to explain which one we are talking about.

*She's the girl **who has green eyes**.*
*That's the town **where I was born**.*

Use *who* for a person.

*He's the doctor **who** looked after your grandmother.*

Use *where* for a place.

*This is the city **where** she grew up.*

We can use *which/that* when we are defining a place.

*Paris is the city **which** I'd like to visit the most.*

Use *which* for a thing.

*This is the knife **which** the killer used.*

It is possible to use *that* instead of *which* or *who*.

*She's the girl **that** lives next door.*
*This is the machine **that** we used to make the copies.*

When we define something by using a relative clause, we use *the*, not *a/an*.

*It's **a** car. We used it at the weekend.*
*It's **the** car **that** we used at the weekend.*

8.2 *too much/many, enough, very*

word	use it before	meaning	example
too	adjectives/adverbs	more than is necessary/right	I'm **too tired** to study.
too much	uncountable nouns		There's **too much water**.
too many	countable nouns		There are **too many people** here.
enough	nouns	the correct amount	Is there **enough petrol** for the trip?
not enough	nouns	less than is necessary/right	There **aren't enough chairs**.
very	adjectives/adverbs	emphasis (can be good or bad)	She's **very nice**. He's **very ugly**.

Too is always used to say that something is negative (more than is necessary/right).

*These trousers are **too** small.* (negative)

Much is used with uncountable nouns, e.g. *rice*, *water*, *money*, *news*. These are called uncountable nouns because we cannot say ~~*one rice*~~ or ~~*two rice*~~.

Many is used with countable nouns, e.g. *days*, *people*, *dollars*, *computers*. These are called countable nouns because it is possible to say *one day*, *two days*, etc.

It is possible to use adjective + *enough* to say something is OK.

*The room is **big enough**.*

It is possible to use *enough* before a noun.

*Do we have **enough chairs**?*

Use *very* + adjective with positive or negative ideas.

*She's **very nice**.* (positive)
*This hat is **very expensive**.* (negative)

Spoken grammar: We sometimes use *enough* as a noun.

*That's **enough**. You're talking too much, children.*

It is common to end a sentence with *enough* when the listener already knows what we are talking about.

***A:** What about drinks?*
***B:** We have **enough**.*

8.3 buying things

customer	assistant
Excuse me.	Can I help (you)?
I'm just looking.	Are you looking for anything in particular?
Do you sell …?	Who's next, please?
Do you have one of these in red/blue/a larger size?	Are you paying by cash or credit card?
Can I try it/this on?	Can you just sign here, please?
Where's the fitting room?	Can you enter your PIN, please?
It fits./It doesn't fit.	

https://polcet.edu.vn

PRACTICE

8.1

A **Rewrite the two sentences as one sentence. Use the prompts and relative clauses.**

1 Laguna is a town. I spent my holidays there.
Laguna is the town *where I spent my holidays*.
2 Did you get the present? I sent it to you last week.
Did you get the present _____?
3 Burnham Place is a restaurant. You can watch the chefs make your food there.
Burnham Place is the _____.
4 Geekstore is a shop. It sells cheap iPods and mobiles.
Geekstore _____.
5 Nichola Leeson is an accountant. She helped me complete my tax form.
Nichola Leeson is the _____.
6 Corleone is a town. I learnt how to do business there.
Corleone is the town _____.
7 A man invested the money. He was a criminal.
The man _____.

B **Match the endings in the box to 1–6 and write relative clauses. You need to change/cut some words.**

~~you study there~~
she lends me
it sells insurance
he borrows $1,000,000 to buy a horse
she was working as a chef
we went on our honeymoon

1 A school is a place *where you study*.
2 The film is about a man
3 I work for a company
4 I always give back the money
5 What happened to that girl
6 The Bahamas is the place

8.2

A **Find and correct the mistakes. There is a mistake in six of the sentences.**

1 The film was great. It was too funny!
2 There aren't eggs enough to make a cake.
3 That child eats too much sweets.
4 Do you earn money enough to pay the bills?
5 I spent too many time on the first question.
6 I can't help you because I'm too busy.
7 She's very generous – she always tips the waiters.
8 There isn't enough of time to do this exercise.

B **Complete the sentences with *too*, *too much/many*, *(not) enough*, or *very*.**

1 You spend _____ time on your mobile phone. It's bad for your work.
2 I didn't get _____ money from the bank so I need to go back.
3 He was _____ lazy to study so he failed his exam.
4 I don't know how many coins I have in my collection. There are _____ to count.
5 He did _____ well to give up smoking after ten years.
6 I didn't take the dogs for a walk. It was _____ cold.
7 The sofa takes up _____ space. Let's buy a smaller one.
8 The company agreed to do more work, but this was a mistake. There were _____ employees to do it.

8.3

A **Complete the conversation with the words in the box.**

help	fitting	enter	on	fit	size	one	by

A: Hello, can I [1]_____ you?
B: Do you sell jackets?
A: Yes, they're just over there.
B: Can I try this [2]_____?
A: Yes, of course. How is it?
B: It doesn't [3]_____. Do you have it in a larger [4]_____?
A: I think so. Just a moment. Yes, here you are.
B: Thanks. And do you have [5]_____ of these in black?
A: Yes, here it is. Would you like to try it on?
B: Yes, please. Where's the [6]_____ room?
A: Just over there.
B: It fits. I'll take it.
A: OK. Are you paying [7]_____ cash or credit card?
B: Credit card.
A: OK, can you [8]_____ your PIN, please?
B: OK.

https://polcet.edu.vn

9 LANGUAGE BANK

GRAMMAR

9.1 comparatives/superlatives

type of adjective	example	comparative		superlative	
one-syllable	cheap	+ *-er*	cheap**er**	*the* + *-est*	**the** cheap**est**
some two-syllable	quiet	+ *-er*	quiet**er**	*the* + *-est*	**the** quiet**est**
adjectives: ending in *-e* ending in *-y* ending in CVC	safe friendly big	+ *-r* ~~*-y*~~ + *-ier* double the final consonant + *-er*	safe**r** friendl**ier** big**ger**	*the* + *-st* *the* + ~~*-y*~~ + *-iest* *the* + double the final consonant + *-est*	**the** safe**st** **the** friendl**iest** **the** big**gest**
many two- or more syllable	interesting	*more/less* + adjective	**more/less** interesting	*the most/least* + adjective	**the most/least** interesting
irregular	good bad far		better worse further		the best the worst the furthest

There are different ways to compare one or more things.
Superiority: *much/a lot more* + adjective + *than* *A is **a lot more** expensive **than** B.*
Equality: *the same as, as* + adjective + *as* *A is **the same as** B.*
Inferiority: *not as/so* + adjective + *as* *A is not **as big as** B.*
It is possible to use comparatives with nouns.
more/less + noun *He has **more money than** we thought.*
It is common to use the superlative with the present perfect. *It's the **best** restaurant **I've** ever **been** to!*

9.2 articles

***a/an* (indefinite article)**	**example**
the first time something is mentioned	I saw a lion yesterday.
before singular nouns	There's a library in the town.
before job titles (in general)	I'm an actor.

no article (zero article)	**example**
to talk about things or people in general	Dogs are friendly animals.
before plural nouns	I'm taking four classes this term.
before most cities, countries and continents	I live in Germany.
in some phrases with prepositions	on Tuesday, at sea, in hospital, at work

***the* (definite article)**	**example**
to talk about something that has already been mentioned or information that the speaker and the listener already know	I saw a lion. The lion was sleeping.
to talk about something when there is only one	I looked at the Moon.
before some plural place names	the United States
before seas/oceans/rivers	the Atlantic
before the names of some areas	the north west of England
in some phrases with prepositions	in the evening, at the beginning
with superlatives	She is the tallest.

9.3 making guesses

it is possible	**example**
It could + infinitive	He could be late because of traffic.
It might + infinitive	It might be John at the door.
Maybe …	Maybe it's an antelope.
Perhaps …	Perhaps she went to bed late last night.

it is not possible	**example**
It can't be …	It can't be Mary's coat because she didn't come to the party.
It's definitely not …	What's the answer? It's definitely not 'A'.

https://polcet.edu.vn

PRACTICE

9.1

A Put the adjectives in brackets into the correct form.

1 Eating at home is *cheaper* *than* eating in restaurants. (cheap)
2 People in cities work _____ hours _____ in the past. (long)
3 There is more traffic now, so the streets are _____ _____. (noisy)
4 History is much _____ _____ _____ physics. (interesting)
5 Houses are _____ _____ _____ they were ten years ago. (expensive)
6 Life in the city is _____ _____ _____ it was before. (dangerous)
7 Cairo is even _____ _____ I expected. (hot)
8 South America is _____ _____ _____ Europe. (exciting)
9 I wish it was _____ _____ in this country. I'm freezing! (cold)

B Make superlative sentences with the prompts.

1 This / exciting / holiday / I ever have
This is the most exciting holiday I've ever had.
2 You / good / friend / I ever have
3 That / boring / film / I ever see
4 This / short / day / year
5 That / long / run / I ever do
6 This / old / building / I ever see
7 That / hard / job / ever do

9.2

A Underline the correct alternative.

1 Many people are frightened of *a/an/the/–* spiders.
2 I had a pet cat which I loved, but *a/an/the/–* cat didn't like me!
3 *A/An/The/–* vegetarians are people who don't eat meat.
4 The blue whale is *a/an/the/–* heaviest animal in the world.
5 We heard that there is *a/an/the/–* new gorilla in the zoo.
6 *A/An/The/–* bats drink blood.
7 There is *a/an/the/–* elephant that lived to the age of seventy-eight.
8 The mammal that sleeps *a/an/the/–* longest is the barrow ground squirrel.
9 We saw *a/an/the/–* eagle when we were in Namibia.
10 She used to work at Animals4U before *a/an/the/–* shop closed down.



B There is an article missing (*a*, *an* or *the*) in each sentence in the text. Complete the text with the missing articles.

I was feeling bored so I went for walk. The trees were green and sky was blue. It was beautiful day. Suddenly I heard a strange noise, like animal. But I knew it wasn't cat because cats don't sound like that. Sound continued for a minute or more. I went home and switched on TV to watch the local news. The newsreader said, 'Some animals have escaped from city zoo.'

9.3

A Match statements 1–8 with responses a)–h).

1 She didn't come to school today.
2 The bill is 28 euros.
3 Who is that man?
4 What's that smell in the kitchen?
5 When is her birthday?
6 I can't find my keys.
7 He's lost his homework.
8 How many people are called Smith?

a) It might be onions. My mother is cooking.
b) I don't know, but it's definitely not today.
c) Perhaps the dog ate it again.
d) There could be millions. It's the most common name in the UK.
e) She could be sick.
f) Maybe you left them in the car.
g) That can't be right. We only had two cups of coffee!
h) It can't be David. He's out of the country until next week.

https://polcet.edu.vn

10 LANGUAGE BANK

GRAMMAR

10.1 uses of *like*

like (verb)				
+		I	like	living in the city.
–		She	doesn't like	
?	Do Where do	you	like	going out in the evening?

Use *like* (verb) to talk about things you like:
*What do you **like doing** in the evening?*
*I **like going out** at night.*

be like (preposition)				
?	What	is	he/she/it/Antigua/your new house	like?

Use *be like* (preposition) to ask for a description:
***A:** What's it (the city) **like**?*
***B:** It's a big city, with lots of traffic.*
Note: Be careful not to confuse the two forms.
***Question:** What's it like?*
***Answer:** It's a lovely city.* NOT ~~*I like it very much.*~~

10.2 present/past passive

Use subject + *be* + past participle to form the passive.

present passive					
		subject	***be***	**past participle**	
+		I/you/he/she/it/we/they	am/are/is	told	that he is the best player.
–		Rugby	isn't	played	here.
?	Is	this dish		made	with potatoes?

past passive					
		subject	***be***	**past participle**	
+		I/you/he/she/it/we/they	was/were	stopped	by a policeman.
–		The photo	wasn't	taken	here.
?	Was	the dog		killed?	

Use the active voice to talk about the things people do:
*John **stole** the camera.*
*Liz **ate** the bread.*
Use the passive voice:
- to talk about what happens to things or people:
  *The camera **was stolen** by John.*
  *The bread **was eaten** by Liz.*
- when the cause of the action is unknown:
  *Thousands of people **are killed** on the roads every year.* (We don't know who kills them.)
- when the cause of the action is not important:
  *The cakes **are made** in France.* (It is not important who makes them.)

If we want to say who does/did the action, we use *by*:
*The criminal was caught **by** the police.*
*Penicillin was discovered **by** Sir Alexander Fleming.*

10.3 complaining

before making a complaint	**complaint**	**response**
Could you help me? I'm afraid I have a complaint. Excuse me, could I speak to the manager?	There's a problem with … It doesn't work. I've been here for over an hour.	We'll look into it right away. I'm sorry, but there's nothing we can do at the moment. I'm really sorry about that.

https://polcet.edu.vn

PRACTICE

10.1

A **Put the words in the correct order to make questions.**

1 like / job / your / what's / new ?
2 new / do / my / dress / like / you ?
3 like / what / is / tapas ?
4 there / the / what's / like / weather ?
5 like / in / you / living / the / do / country ?

B **Match questions 1–5 with answers a)–e).**

a) I love it. It's so peaceful.
b) Yes. It really suits you.
c) It is delicious. It is small dishes of vegetables, fish and meat. You can eat them as a starter.
d) It's great. I really like the people I'm working with.
e) It's terrible. It's windy and wet.

C **Find and correct the mistakes. There is a mistake in each line.**

1 I like listen to music. My favourite band is Jamiroquai.
2 How is the flat like? Is it modern?
3 Have you seen *Terminator 4*? Did you like?
4 So, you've got a new boss. What's like he?
5 What's like the weather? Is it raining?
6 Are you like speaking English?

10.2

A **Underline the correct alternative.**

1 Only fresh fish *is serve/is served/is to serve* in this restaurant.
2 Yesterday she *has given/was given/is given* a ten-year prison sentence.
3 Shoplifters *aren't caught/not caught/aren't catch* very often.
4 This book *was written/is written/was wrote* by a Frenchman in 1886.
5 At the moment, films *are show/were shown/are shown* only on Wednesday evenings.
6 Hundreds of people *arrested/were arrest/are arrested* for drink-driving every day.
7 I made the mistake because I *am not telling/wasn't told/haven't told* what to do.
8 The prisoners *are sent/were send/were sent* home last night.

B **Rewrite the sentences in the passive. Add *by* where necessary.**

1 The French eat snails.
Snails _____.
2 Dostoyevsky wrote *Crime and Punishment*.
Crime and Punishment _____.
3 A journalist asked me some questions.
I _____.
4 Alejandro Ledesma produces all of our programmes.
All of our programmes _____.
5 Alec Guinness played most of the roles in that film.
Most of the roles in that film
_____.
6 Swiss companies make the best chocolate.
The best chocolate _____.

10.3

A **Put the words in the correct order to make conversations.**

Conversation 1

A: me / excuse / complaint / have / afraid / a / I'm / I
B: what's / problem / the ?
A: doesn't / shower / work / the
B: look / away / it / into / we'll / right

Conversation 2

A: me / excuse / you / me / help / could ?
B: Yes
A: a / the / with / problem / internet / connection / there's
B: nothing / sorry / can / but / I'm / the / we / at / moment / there's / do

Conversation 3

A: excuse / to / speak / me / could / manager / I / the ?
B: Yes
A: an / I've / been / hour / here / over / for
B: sorry / really / I'm / that / about

https://polcet.edu.vn

11 LANGUAGE BANK

GRAMMAR

11.1 present perfect + *just/yet/already*



It is common to use the present perfect with *just*, *yet* and *already*.

Use *just* to talk about something which happened very recently. Put *just* before the main verb.

*I've **just** passed my driving test!*
*We've **just** got back from holiday.*

Use *yet* in negative sentences and questions to talk about something which hasn't happened, but you expect it to. Put *yet* at the end of the sentence.

***A:** Are you ready?*
***B:** No, we haven't finished **yet**.*
***A:** Have you booked a table **yet**?*
***B:** No, not **yet**. I'll call the restaurant in a minute.*

Use *already* to talk about something which happened, maybe before you expected. Put *already* before the main verb or at the end of the sentence.

*I've **already** had four cups of coffee this morning.*
*He's found a job **already**!*

Spoken grammar: It is common to use *not yet* as a short response to a question. It means we expect to do something soon, but we have not done it.

11.2 real conditionals + *if/when*

If/When	+ present	+ *will/won't* + infinitive
If When	you don't study, the film finishes,	you won't pass the exam. I'll turn off the TV.

Use *If/When* + present + *will* + infinitive to form a real conditional.

There are two clauses: the *if/when* clause and the main clause. You can reverse the order of the clauses, but the *if/when* clause always uses the present tense.

(*if/when* clause) (main clause)
*If we see Ann, we'**ll ask** her to call you.*
NOT ~~*If we will see*~~ *Ann, we'll ask her to call you.*

(main clause) (*if/when* clause)
*We'**ll** ask Ann to call you **if** we see her.*

Use real conditionals to talk about situations in the future and their consequences.

Use *if* for a situation which is likely. Use *when* for a situation which is certain.

If I pass my driving test today, I'll be very surprised. (I'm not sure about this.)
When I pass my driving test, my father will buy me a car. (I'm sure about this.)

It is also possible to use *may/might/could/should* in the main clause instead of *will*.

***If** it's sunny, we **might** have a picnic later.*
***When** they arrive, they **should** call to tell us.*

11.3 giving opinions

agreeing	disagreeing	giving your opinion
That's right. That's true. Definitely.	I totally disagree. I'm not sure about that. I don't think so.	I think … I don't think … In my opinion …

To sound polite, use *I'm afraid* and *I'm sorry, but …* when you disagree.

***I'm afraid** I totally disagree.*
***I'm sorry, but** it's just not possible.*

https://polcet.edu.vn

PRACTICE

11.1

A Underline the correct alternative.

1 We're travelling around the Greek Islands. We've been to fourteen islands *just/yet/already*.
2 I'm leaving this evening, but I haven't packed my bags *just/yet/already*.
3 **A:** Have you seen Martha?
B: She's *just/yet/already* left. You might catch her in the lift if you hurry.
4 **A:** Can you wait a minute, please?
B: I've *just/yet/already* been here for more than half an hour.
5 **A:** Do you know if your sister is coming to the party?
B: I'm not sure. I haven't spoken to her *just/yet/already*.
6 I thought Alf was going away for three weeks, but he's *just/yet/already* come back.
7 Great! I've *just/yet/already* booked the tickets on the internet. Now, we wait for the confirmation.
8 **A:** Can you call Emily?
B: I've *just/yet/already* spoken to her. That was her on the phone a minute ago.

B Find and correct the mistakes. There is a mistake in the word order in each conversation.

1 **A:** Have you read this book?
B: Yes, I've finished it just.
2 **A:** Are you ready to go?
B: No, Imelda hasn't called yet us.
3 **A:** Let's go to the British Museum.
B: We've been already there.
4 **A:** Becky looks tired.
B: Well, just she's run five miles.
5 **A:** Are you coming out later?
B: I'd love to come out, but I haven't finished yet my work.
6 **A:** There's a film on tonight.
B: Yes, but already I've seen it three times!

11.2

A Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1 I _____ home when I _____ my studies. (leave/finish)
2 If you _____ the class, I _____ some notes for you. (miss/take)
3 When I _____ Sandra, I _____ her what she thinks. (see/ask)
4 We _____ time for lunch if the train _____ at 12 o'clock. (not have/leave)
5 If I _____ my boss for a pay rise, he _____ it to me. (ask/not give)
6 I _____ dinner if you _____ the shopping. (cook/do)
7 If the weather _____ nice, we _____ out for a walk. (be/go)
8 We _____ on holiday when Al _____ some time off work. (go/get)

B Find and correct the mistakes. There are mistakes in four of the sentences.

1 If you will be in the office tomorrow, we talk about it then.
2 When Brian comes back from holiday, we'll arrange to go out.
3 When I hear from the rest of the team, I'll let you know.
4 We'll ask the doctor when we will get to the hospital.
5 If Theo behaves badly in class, the teacher speak to his parents.
6 They move into the house as soon as Mark will finish building it.

11.3

A There is a word missing in each sentence. Complete the sentences with the missing word.

1 I'm, but I don't think there is enough money for that.
2 I don't we should spend too much time discussing this.
3 I have to say I think right.
4 I'm afraid totally disagree.
5 Make them pay fines? I'm not sure that.
6 In opinion, we should start from the beginning.

B Complete the conversations with the phrases in the box.

I'm afraid	I think	totally disagree	my opinion
Definitely	not sure about		

A: [1] _____ we should all go home early today.
B: I'm [2] _____ that.
A: It's OK to hunt animals for sport.
B: [3] _____ I [4] _____.
A: In [5] _____, these politicians should go to prison.
B: [6] _____! They're criminals.

https://polcet.edu.vn

12 LANGUAGE BANK

GRAMMAR

12.1 reported speech

direct speech	reported speech
present simple → 'I **play** the guitar.' →	past simple She **said** she **played** the guitar.
present continuous → 'They **are** watching a film.' →	past continuous He **told** us they **were watching** a film.
will → 'I**'ll** call you later.' →	would She **said** she **would** call me later.
can → 'He **can** work until 9.00.' →	could She **told** me he **could** work until 9.00.

When we report speech, the pronouns sometimes change.

*'**I** eat meat.' → **He** said **he** ate meat.*

*'**We**'ll help you tomorrow.' → **They** said **they** would help me tomorrow.*

Use reported speech to tell someone what another person said.

It is common to change the verb tense/form when we report speech.

It is common to use *say* and *tell* to report speech.

Tell is followed by an object.

*He **told me** (that) he was hungry.* NOT

He ~~told that~~ he was hungry.

Say is *not* followed by an object.

*She **said** she worked in France.* NOT

She ~~said me~~ she worked in France.

When the present simple is used to describe a habit, we don't need to change the verb tense in reported speech.

*'I **get** up at 6a.m.' → She said she **gets** up at 6a.m.*

*'We **don't** eat meat.' → They told us they **don't** eat meat.*

12.2 hypothetical conditionals for present/future

If + past simple	+ *would/wouldn't* + infinitive
If I had more money, If I wanted a job, If I was famous,	I would buy a car. I would look for one. I wouldn't be happy.

Use *If* + past simple + *would/wouldn't* + infinitive to form a hypothetical conditional.

Use hypothetical conditionals to talk about an imaginary situation in the present or future and its consequence.

*If I **knew** the way to the museum, I **would tell** you.*

(I don't know the way to the museum.)

*If I **won** the lottery, I **would** never **work** again!*

(I'm very unlikely to win the lottery – it's an imaginary situation.)

Would is often contracted (*I'd, you'd, he'd, we'd, they'd*). *Would not* is contracted to *wouldn't*.

*If we had more money, we**'d** buy a bigger house.*

*We **wouldn't** live in the city if we didn't need to.*

It is possible to change the order of the clauses. Notice that there is a comma after the *if* clause in the first example, but no comma in the second example.

***If** we had children, our lives would be very different.*

*Our lives would be very different **if** we had children.*

With the verb *be* it is possible to use *were* (instead of *was*).

If he was/were a lawyer, he would tell you what to do.

Use *If I were you …* to give advice.

***If I were you**, I'd tell him your plans.* NOT ~~*If I was you.*~~

It is also possible to use *could*.

*If I **could** sing, I would start a band.*

12.3 requests and offers

requests	responses	offers
I'd like to … Would it be possible to …? Would you be able to …? Could you recommend …?	No problem. Certainly. Yes, of course.	Would you like me to …? Do you want me to (get a) …? Shall I …?

https://polcet.edu.vn

PRACTICE

12.1

A **Rewrite the sentences as reported speech.**

1 'My favourite film is about an invisible man.'
She told me _____.
2 'I don't like westerns.'
He said _____.
3 'They are actors.'
She told us _____.
4 'The film isn't really about fashion.'
He said _____.
5 'I work for a film studio.'
He told me_____.
6 'That director is famous.'
We told her _____.
7 'I write thrillers.'
She said _____.
8 'The scene reminds me of another film.'
He said _____.

B **Rewrite the reported sentences as direct speech.**

1 Gianella said she loved chocolate.
'I love chocolate.'
2 He told us he was home by 6.00p.m. every day.
' _____ '
3 Marina said she didn't want to do her homework.
' _____ '
4 They told me they were busy.
' _____ '
5 Yannick said he didn't understand the lecture.
' _____ '
6 I told you I didn't like flying.
' _____ '
7 Xun Li said she went back to China every summer.
' _____ '

12.2

A **Match 1–6 with a)–f) to make sentences.**

1 If you went to bed earlier,
2 If she asked Tim to marry her,
3 If we came in the summer,
4 We would visit you tomorrow
5 I'd get there early
6 She would earn more money

a) would we go to the beach?
b) if I were you.
c) you wouldn't feel so tired.
d) if the trains were running.
e) if she worked longer hours.
f) I'm sure he would say 'Yes'.

B **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.**

1 I _____ to the doctor if I _____ you. He can give you some medicine. (go/be)
2 If they _____ ice cream here, _____ you _____ some? (sell/buy)
3 I _____ you if I _____, but I'm too busy right now. (help/can)
4 If I _____ my phone with me, I _____ him. (have/call)
5 If we _____ more food, I _____ them to stay for dinner. (have/ask)
6 If you _____ nearer to us, we _____ you more often. (live/see)
7 _____ your brother _____ happier if he _____ so hard? (be/not work)
8 If you _____ always _____ such a mess, the kitchen _____ cleaner! (not make/be)

12.3

A **There are words missing from the conversations. Complete the conversations with the words in the box.**

want	it	me	shall	no	of	to	able	could

Conversation 1

A: You recommend a good coffee shop?
B: Certainly. There's one on Elm Road called Hot Beans.
A: Great.
B: Would you like to show you where it is?
A: Oh yes, please. That's very kind of you.

Conversation 2

A: I'd like eat out tonight.
B: OK. Do you me to choose the restaurant?
A: Yes, why not?
B: OK. And I book a table for two?
A: Er, no – three. I'm inviting Bobby.

Conversation 3

A: Would you be to get me a good plumber?
B: Problem.
A: Would be possible to do it today? I have to travel tomorrow.
B: Yes, course.

https://polcet.edu.vn

PHOTO BANK

Lesson 2.2 JOBS

1 Match photos A–P to the jobs.

1 accountant
2 architect
3 businessman/woman
4 chef
5 electrician
6 estate agent
7 housewife
8 lawyer
9 PA (personal assistant)
10 plumber
11 receptionist
12 sales assistant
13 scientist
14 soldier
15 TV presenter
16 vet

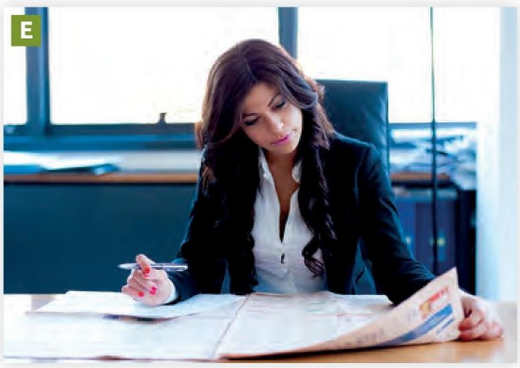
2 Work in pairs. Discuss. Which jobs do you think are dangerous/enjoyable/boring? Why?











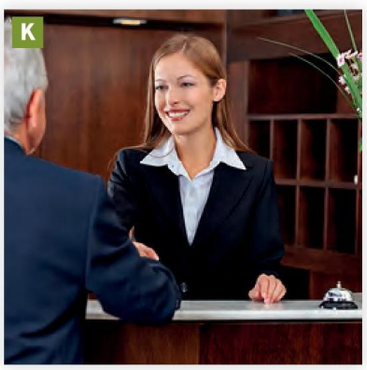










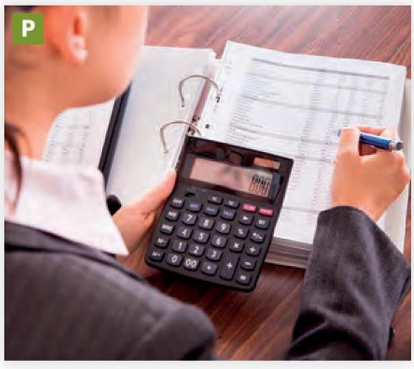












https://polcet.edu.vn

Lesson 3.1 TIME OUT

1 Match photos A–O to the activities 1–15.

collect:
1 stamps
2 coins

go to:
3 a concert
4 a nightclub
5 the gym

go to/see:
6 an exhibition
7 a show

play:
8 cards
9 chess
10 computer games
11 board games
12 hang out with friends
13 join a club
14 surf the net
15 walk/cycle/skate through a park

2 Work in pairs. Discuss. Which of these have you never done? Which would you like to do?



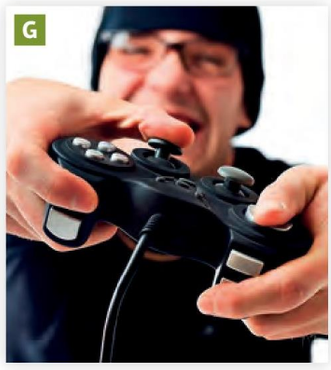
















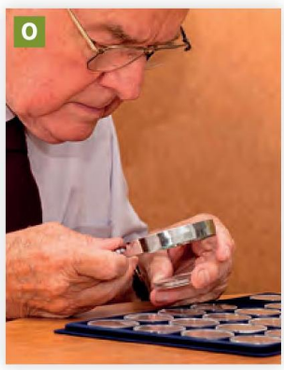












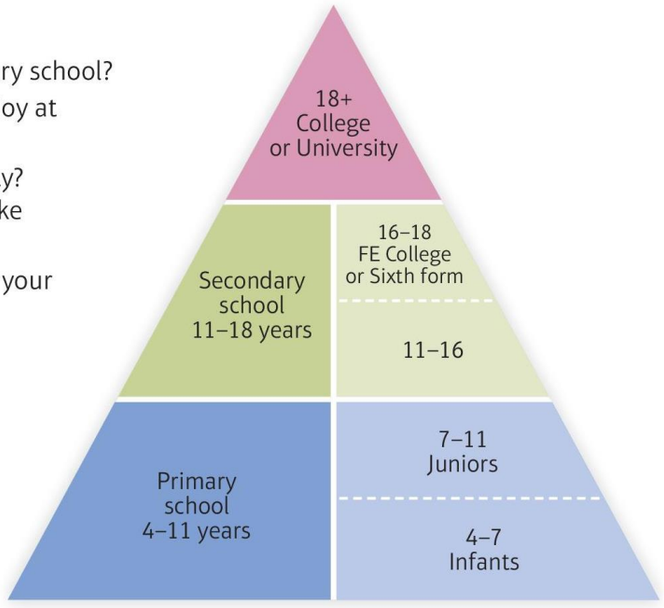
https://polcet.edu.vn

PHOTO BANK

Lesson 4.2 EDUCATION

1 Answer the questions.

1 Where did you go to primary school?
2 Which subjects did you enjoy at secondary school?
3 Have you been to university? What did you/would you like to study?
4 Is the education system in your country similar to the one in England?



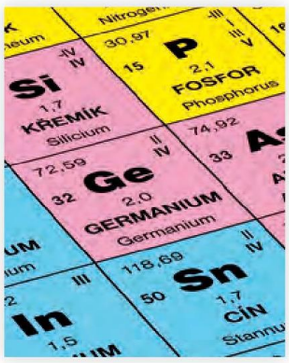
State Education in England



maths



physics



chemistry



biology



geography



history



languages



art



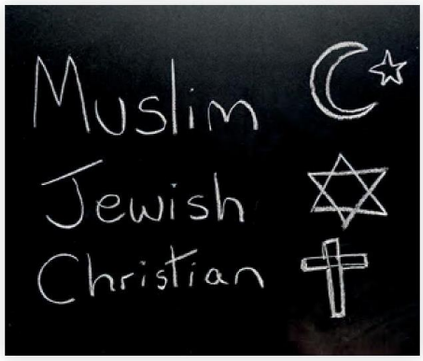
design and technology



PE (Physical Education)



IT (Information Technology)



RE (Religious Education)



drama

https://polcet.edu.vn

Lesson 5.1 TRANSPORT

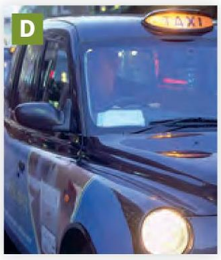
1 Match photos A–N to the types of transport.

1 aeroplane
2 coach
3 ferry
4 helicopter
5 hot air balloon
6 lorry
7 minibus
8 moped
9 motorbike
10 ship
11 speedboat
12 taxi
13 tram
14 underground





























2 Work in pairs. Discuss. Which types of transport do you use regularly? Which do you think are the most enjoyable ways to travel?

Lesson 5.2 TRAVEL ITEMS

1 Match photos A–R to the travel items.

1 alarm clock
2 aspirin
3 binoculars
4 dictionary
5 digital camera
6 first aid kit
7 map
8 money belt
9 notebook
10 backpack
11 soap
12 souvenirs
13 suitcase
14 sun hat
15 travel guide
16 umbrella
17 walking boots
18 waterproof clothes











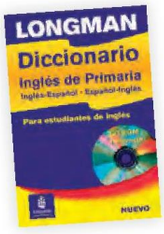


























2 Work in pairs and take turns. Student A: describe an item. Student B: guess the item.

A: You wear these when it is raining.
B: Waterproof clothes.

https://polcet.edu.vn

PHOTO BANK

Lesson 6.1 HEALTH

1 A Check the meaning of sports 1–30 below.

1 badminton
2 basketball
3 boxing
4 cricket
5 cycling
6 football
7 golf
8 hockey
9 horse racing
10 horseriding
11 jogging
12 judo
13 karate
14 ping pong/ table tennis
15 rollerblading
16 rugby
17 running
18 sailing
19 scuba-diving
20 skateboarding
21 skiing
22 squash
23 snorkelling
24 snowboarding
25 surfing
26 swimming
27 tennis
28 volleyball
29 windsurfing
30 yoga

B Which sports can you see in photos A–M?

2 Work in pairs. Discuss. Which sports are popular in your country? Which have you tried?


A



B


C


D



E



F


G


H



I


J


K


L


M

https://polcet.edu.vn

Lesson 6.2 FOOD

1 Which of these foods do you a) never eat b) eat a lot of?

2 Which types of food/drink do you think are a) very good b) very bad for your health?

GRAINS


corn


wheat


oats

MEAT AND FISH/SEAFOOD


chicken


duck


beefsteak


leg of lamb


fish


shrimps


mussels


lobster

DAIRY


milk


cheese


cream


yoghurt

DESSERTS


jelly


cake


biscuits


ice cream

DRINKS


tea


coffee


orange juice


fizzy drink

VEGETABLES


soya beans


potatoes


carrots


spinach


broccoli


cabbage


lettuce


peas


onion


garlic


cucumbers


courgettes

FRUIT


pineapple


apple


orange


grapes


grapefruit


bananas


kiwi fruit


mango


melon


watermelon


plums


lemon

https://polcet.edu.vn

PHOTO BANK

Lesson 8.1 MONEY

1 Match photos A–H to the words.

1 bank statement
2 cheque
3 notes
4 ATM
5 credit cards
6 coins
7 bill
8 receipt



2 Work in pairs and take turns.
Student A: describe an item.
Student B: guess the item.

A: This is money made from metal.
B: Coins.

Lesson 9.1 NATURE

1 Which do you like to visit on holiday? Which of these do you have in your country? Work in pairs. Discuss.


ocean


lake


river


waterfall


mountain range


desert


glacier


rainforest


coastline

https://polcet.edu.vn

Lesson 9.3 ANIMALS

1 Write the names of the animals in the correct places.

1 bear
2 butterfly
3 camel
4 chimpanzee
5 cow
6 crocodile
7 dolphin
8 eagle
9 elephant
10 fly
11 gorilla
12 leopard
13 lion
14 monkey
15 ostrich
16 penguin
17 pigeon
18 snake
19 spider
20 tiger
21 whale

2 Work in pairs. Discuss. Which do you think are dangerous/beautiful/intelligent?

WATER CREATURES


A shark


B


C

BIG CATS

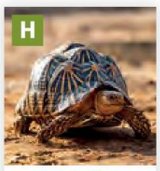

D cheetah


E


F


G

REPTILES


H tortoise


I


J

INSECTS


K mosquito


L


M


N

BIRDS

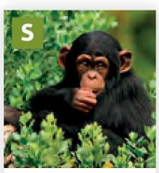

O


P

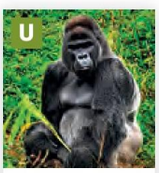

Q


R

PRIMATES


S

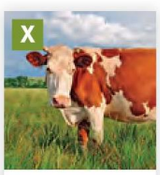

T

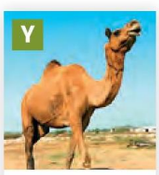

U

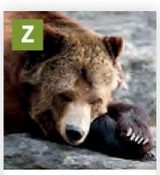
MAMMALS


V sloth


W


X


Y


Z

Lesson 10.2 CRIME AND PUNISHMENT

1 Which words can you see in the pictures?

People:
1 criminal
2 police officer
3 judge
4 victim

Verbs:
5 steal
6 break in
7 shoot
8 arrest
9 investigate

2 Can you match any of the people to the verbs?

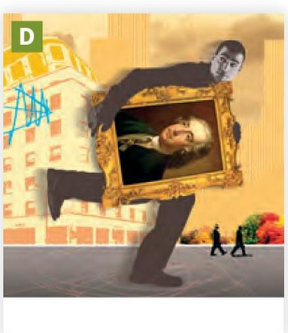
Criminals steal things.



A

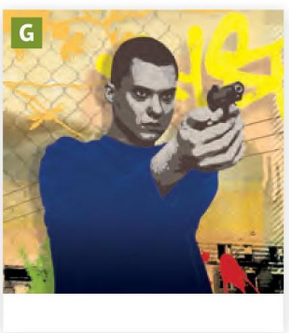

B


C


D


E


F


G

https://polcet.edu.vn

COMMUNICATION BANK

Lesson 1.3

4 A **Student A: make questions or comments with the prompts for Student B. Listen to Student B's responses.**

1 would / like / drink?
2 watch / match / last night?
3 nice / day?
4 work / here?

B **Listen to Student B's questions and comments. Choose the correct response.**

1 Hi, Pete. Pleased to meet you./ Dear Mr Pete. How do you do?
2 Yes, thanks. I didn't do much./ Yes, thank you. I am enjoying it.
3 I'm coming from Toledo, near Madrid./ I'm from Toledo, near Madrid.
4 It's nice to meet you./ Yes, see you soon.

Lesson 3.5

4 C **Answers to quiz**

2 Reagan
3 *A Night at the Opera*
4 Raphael
5 Elton
6 One Love
7 Venice
8 Céline
9 Nelly Furtado

Lesson 4.3

9 A **Student A: explain your problem. Then listen and respond to the advice.**

Your son is eighteen years old and lives at home. He needs to study for his exams, but in the evening he goes out with friends until late. He often misses lessons or falls asleep when he is studying. At home you do all the cooking and cleaning and give your son money every week.

B **Listen to another student's problem. Give the student some advice.**

Lesson 2.2

4 B **Student B**

Danger Rating 8/10


Motorbike courier, Brazil

In Brazil, they are called motoboys, and on average, one of them dies in traffic every day. Foreign correspondent Peter Lane met the motoboys of São Paulo. He learnt that accidents are not the only problem – there are also robberies. It happened to Roberto Coelho.

'It was terrible, a really bad time for me. I lost everything. We don't have insurance and the company doesn't help us.' The motoboys usually earn just $450 a month.

Lane asks, 'When you know the streets are dangerous, why do you still drive so fast?' Coelho says it's because they often work under time pressure. 'We know it's dangerous, but we have no choice.'

Lane also spoke to some car drivers. One said, 'These motorcycle couriers are so dangerous. They drive too fast and they don't care about the rules of the road.' Another said, 'Most of them are just kids. It's no surprise they have accidents.'

Once in a while, they try to change the traffic laws – they want the motoboys to drive like everyone else. But the changes all failed, so the motoboys continue to risk their lives in one of the most dangerous jobs in the world.

Lesson 3.3

8 **Student A: think about what you are going to say when you receive and make phone calls in these situations. Role-play the situations with Student B.**

Answer the phone

1 You work for Nova Restaurant. Take a message.
2 You work for Amber Cinema. Answer the phone and tell a customer the times of the film *The Magic Hat:* 2.30p.m., 5.00p.m., 7.30p.m. and 10.00p.m., with a special extra showing at 12.00p.m. at the weekend.
3 Answer the phone normally. Listen and respond to the invitation.

Make a call

4 You are calling Ripping Yarns, a theatre company. You would like six tickets for *Hamlet* for Friday.
5 You are calling Brandon's Restaurant. You want to change your reservation from 7.30p.m. on Tuesday to 8.00p.m. next Wednesday There will now be ten people, not five, so you need a bigger table.
6 Ask your partner if he/she wants to go for a snack after class.

https://polcet.edu.vn

Lesson 5.1

3 Student B: read the text and make notes.

INTO THE WILD

When Chris McCandless graduated from Emory University, USA, he knew he wanted more from life than a normal career. He gave away his savings – $24,000 – to charity, abandoned his car, burned the money in his wallet, and gave himself a new name: Alexander Supertramp. He rejected the modern world and decided to experience life alone and in the wild.

With hardly any equipment or technology, McCandless went into the Alaskan wilderness*. While he was travelling, he met several people who helped him, giving him rides and food. One man even offered to adopt him as a grandson, but McCandless decided to keep going, into the wild.

Eventually he ended up in an abandoned bus, hunting and picking plants for food. While he was living wild, he wrote a diary. It described his day-to-day life and the difficulties and pleasures he had from living in nature. McCandless stayed in the bus for four months and then his diary stopped. Eventually his body was found by a hunter.

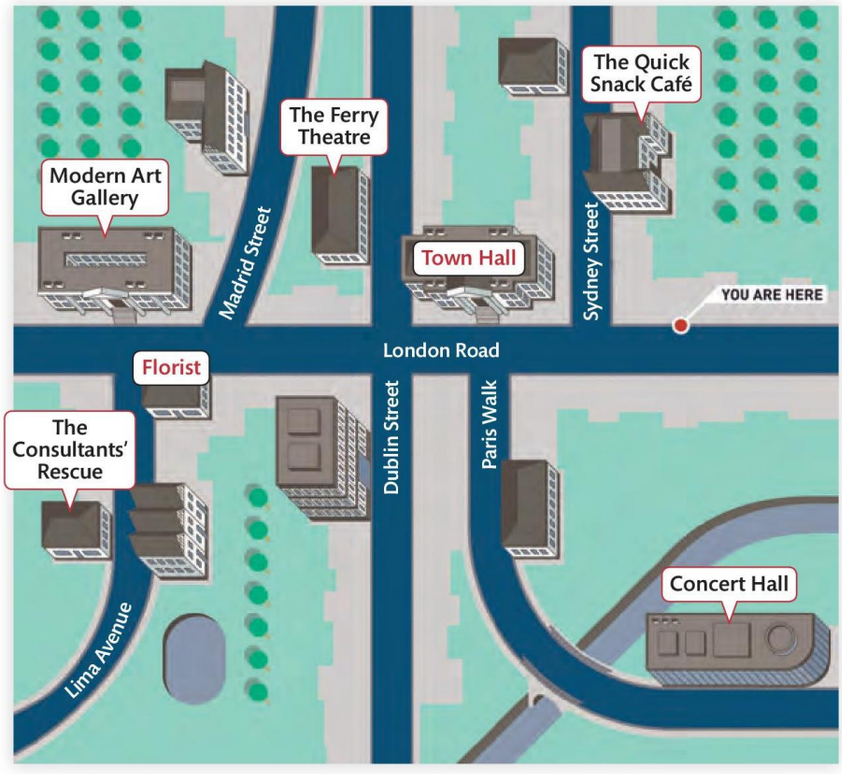
Following a book describing his life, a film came out based on his adventures.

***wilderness:** a wild area where no one lives

Lesson 5.3

8 Student A: look at the map and ask Student B for directions to:

- a nightclub called Risky Business
- a restaurant called The Waterfall
- the Screen by the Pond cinema
- a pub called The Courier's Rest
- the Museum of Fashion and Design



Lesson 6.3

6 A Student A: you are a doctor seeing a patient. Use the prompts to ask questions and make suggestions.

- how long?
- where / hurt?
- when / hurt?
- how / you / hurt?
- take painkillers
- get lots of rest
- don't do sport

Start like this:

Hello. How can I help you?

B Student A: now you are a patient seeing a doctor. Use the prompts to explain your problem.

- bad cough / few months
- tried antibiotics
- no temperature / don't feel ill
- smoke / ten cigarettes a day

Lesson 10.2

7 C Here are the alternative sentences:

1 Over a period of two years, the boys had to clean the walls of every house in the street three times a year.
2 They had to spend a day at a festival standing in a small swimming pool and handing out water-safety leaflets.
3 He was made to listen to classical music for six hours a day.
4 She had to work on the farm for free for one month.

Lesson 10.3

8 B Student B: you are the director at the Noparlo School of English. A student is going to complain about some of the problems in Exercise 8A on page 103. Apologise to the student and think of reasons for the problems. Use these expressions:

I'm really sorry about that.
We had a problem with …
I'll look into it.

https://polcet.edu.vn

COMMUNICATION BANK

Lesson 1.3

4 A **Student B: listen to Student A's questions and comments. Choose the correct response.**

1 I'd love an orange juice, please./ I like orange juice, please.
2 Yes, it was brilliant./Yes, it's lovely.
3 Yes, nice to meet you./Yes, it's lovely.
4 No, I'm a student. / No, I'm working.

B **Make questions or comments with the prompts for Student A. Listen to Student A's responses.**

1 this / friend / Pete
2 have / good / weekend?
3 where / exactly / from?
4 see / later

Lesson 3.3

8 **Student B: think about what you are going to say when you make and receive phone calls in these situations. Role-play the situations with Student A.**

Make a call

1 You are calling Nova Restaurant. You booked a table for Saturday, but you have to cancel it.
2 You are calling Amber Cinema. Ask what time the film *The Magic Hat* is showing.
3 Invite your partner to a film this evening. Say the name and time of the film.

Answer the phone

4 You work for Ripping Yarns, a theatre company. Answer the phone and confirm a ticket reservation.
5 You work for Brandon's Restaurant. A customer wants to change his/her reservation. Take the message and confirm if it is possible.
6 Answer the phone normally. Listen and respond to the invitation.

Lesson 2.2

4 B Student C

Danger Rating 6/10


Jockey, France

'Bang!' goes the gun. The gates open and the horses come running out. All eyes are on them. Money, fame and glory are the prizes.

Horse riding looks so beautiful that it is sometimes easy to forget how dangerous it is. Life as a jockey is rarely safe and it usually involves a few broken bones. Once in a while, jockeys even die during a race.

Jill Cleveland spoke to jockey Vincent Dax in France. As a young man, Dax was one of the best jockeys of his generation. He knows the sport is dangerous, but he never worries. 'When the race starts, we forget about the danger. We know it's not like riding a bicycle or driving a car, but all we think about is winning.'

During his career, Dax has broken many bones, including both arms and one leg, and he once fell off his horse and was knocked unconscious. So why do jockeys risk their lives? 'We love racing. We love the speed and we love the money. Jockeys know the risks involved, but we are good at what we do. If we get hurt, we just get back on the horse. That's life.'

Lesson 4.3

9 A **Student B: explain your problem. Then listen and respond to the advice.**

Your friend would like a girlfriend. The problem is he works long hours and is too tired to go out in the evenings. He usually buys a take-away meal and falls asleep watching the TV. He doesn't have any hobbies and is getting fat. You know lots of single women, but you don't think they would be interested.

B **Listen to another student's problem. Give the student some advice.**

https://polcet.edu.vn

Lesson 5.1

3 Student C: read the text and make notes.

RABBIT-PROOF FENCE

It is Australia in 1931. Three Aborigine girls, Molly, fourteen, her sister Daisy, eight, and their cousin Gracie, ten, were taken from their home by government officials because of their race. They were sent to live in a camp far from home. Life at the camp was terrible, and they hated it.

One night when it was raining, the girls decided to escape. They knew that the rain would hide their footprints in the mud, so they began the long journey home. In the desert they had no food and nowhere to sleep.

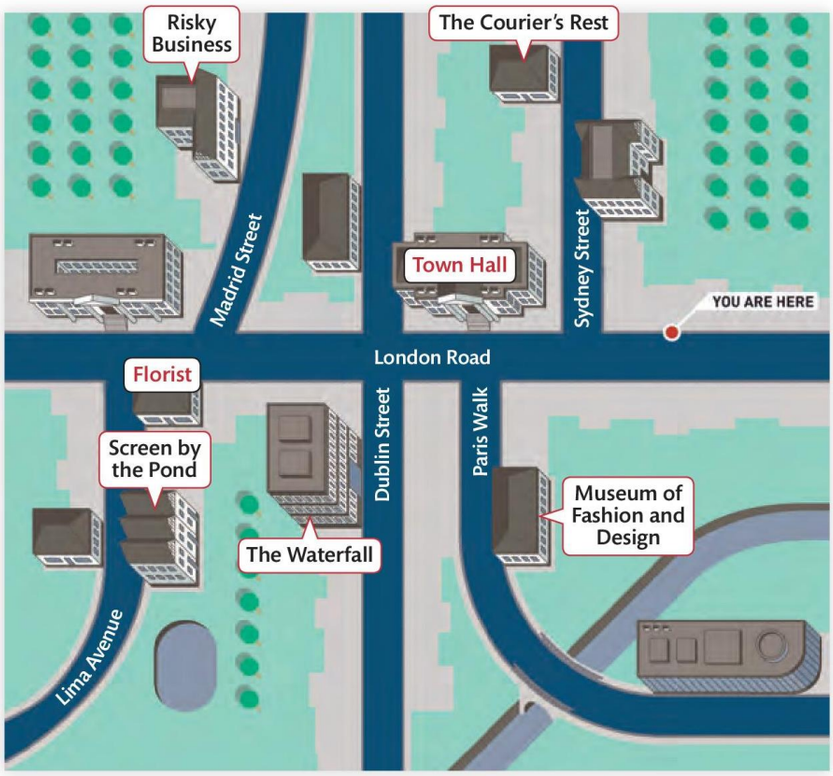
They didn't have a map either, but while they were walking, they saw the 'rabbit-proof fence', one of the longest fences in the world. It was there to stop rabbits from entering farmland. The girls recognised the fence and walked next to it for 1,200 miles. After nine weeks they got home.

Many years later, Molly's daughter, Doris Pilkington Garimara, wrote a book about the journey and in 2002 the story was made into a film, *Rabbit-Proof Fence*.

Lesson 5.3

8 Student B: look at the map and ask Student A for directions to:

- The Quick Snack Café
- The Ferry Theatre
- the Concert Hall
- a bar called The Consultants' Rescue
- the Modern Art Gallery



Lesson 6.3

6 A Student B: you are a patient seeing a doctor. Use the prompts to explain your problem.

- problem / two weeks
- pain / lower back
- hurts / walk
- accident / playing football

B Student B: now you are a doctor seeing a patient. Use the prompts to ask questions and make suggestions.

- how long?
- a temperature?
- feel ill?
- smoke cigarettes?
- have an X-ray
- give up smoking

Start like this:

Hello. What's the problem?

Lesson 8.3

6 A Student A: you work in a clothes shop. You start the conversation.

1 Offer to help.
2 Ask what colour.
3 Give the customer the shirt and say, 'Here you are. The fitting room is over there.'
4 Ask if it fits OK.
5 Ask how he/she wants to pay.
6 Ask him/her to enter his/her PIN.
7 Say thank you and goodbye.

B Student A: now you are in an electronics shop. Student B starts the conversation.

1 Say you are looking for a camera.
2 Say you need a digital one.
3 Thank him/her.
4 Ask for a cheaper one.
5 Say 'This one is fine.'
6 Say you will pay by cash.
7 Say thank you and goodbye.

https://polcet.edu.vn

COMMUNICATION BANK

Lesson 9.3

6 B Answers

1 whale shark
2 spine-tailed swift
3 ostrich
4 python (a snake)
5 cheetah
6 mosquito (it kills people indirectly, by transmitting malaria)
7 whale
8 tortoise

Lesson 9.3

9 B Answers

A An elephant's skin:
Elephant skin is only thick in some places. It is very sensitive.

B An eagle's eye:
Eagles can see fish in the water from hundreds of feet away and an eagle's sight is four times stronger than a human's.

C A dog's nose:
Dogs have an amazing sense of smell. Many dogs can recognise the smell of their old owners many years after they last saw them.

D A chameleon's skin:
A chameleon's skin can change colour when the chameleon needs to hide.

E A shark's teeth:
Some types of shark have thousands of teeth. These teeth are extremely hard. A shark can bite through iron.

F A camel's hump:
Camels' humps are made of fat and they allow camels to survive in the desert without food or water for up to two weeks.

G A fly's eyes:
Flies' eyes are very different from humans' eyes. The shape of flies' eyes allows them to see the world in almost 360 degrees.

Lesson 9.5

1 B Answers

1 a) The Andes are higher than the Rockies.
2 b) Canada has a longer coastline (151,485 miles) than Russia (23,396 miles).
3 b) Lake Michigan in the USA is larger than Lake Toba in Sumatra.
4 a) The Amazon is shorter, but wider than the Nile.
5 a) The Pacific is the deepest ocean.
6 b) Angel Falls, in Venezuela, is the highest waterfall.

Lesson 4.3

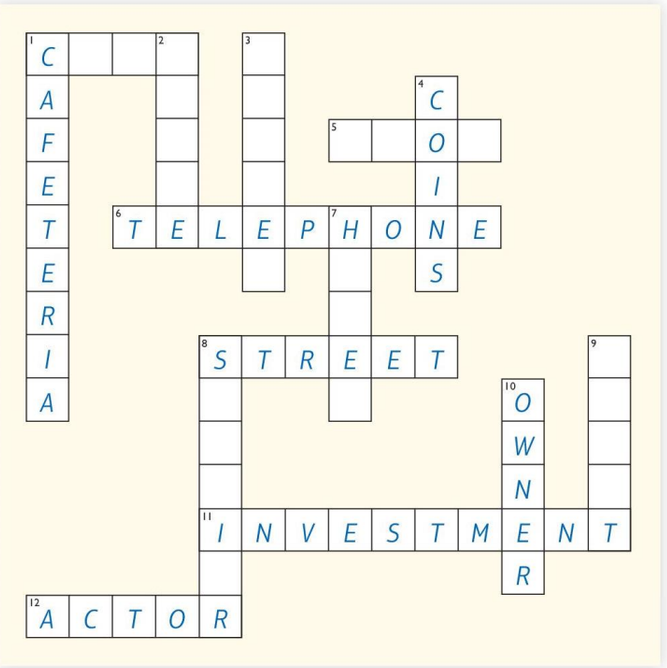
9 A **Student C: explain your problem. Then listen and respond to the advice.**

Your flat-mate loves shopping. Every month she buys new clothes, shoes and designer bags using a credit card. Her room is full of clothes she never wears. She spends more money than she has and borrows money from you to pay her rent. She hasn't paid you back for two months.

B **Listen to another student's problem. Give the student some advice.**

Lesson 8.1

4 C **Student A: write definitions for the completed words with the prompts.**



Down

1 place / buy a snack or a coffee
a place where you buy a snack or a coffee
4 pieces of money / made of metal, not paper
10 person / owns something (he/she bought it or was given it)

Across

6 thing / use / call someone
8 place / you find / cars, houses, shops, etc.
11 money / use / start a business and make more money
12 person / acts in / films or theatre

D **Ask Student B for definitions for the missing words.**

Down: 2, 3, 7, 8 and 9
Across: 1 and 5

https://polcet.edu.vn

Lesson 10.1

1 B Survey results



Lesson 10.3

7 A Student A: you are a hotel guest. You start the conversation.

1 Greet the hotel receptionist.
2 Say you have a problem: your fridge doesn't work.
3 Thank the receptionist.

B Student A: now you are a waiter. Listen to what Student B says, then:

1 Ask how you can help.
2 Apologise for the mistake. Say you will bring the right dish.
3 Apologise again.

Lesson 12.3

8 Student A: you are a concierge. Listen and respond to your client's requests. Ask for more time if necessary. Your client wants to:

- go to the best restaurant in town.
- get tickets to the theatre.

B Student A: now you are a client. Tell the concierge you want to:

- go shopping for clothes. Ask him/her to recommend a good area for shopping.
- visit a film studio and meet some stars. Ask him/her if it's possible.

Lesson 7.3

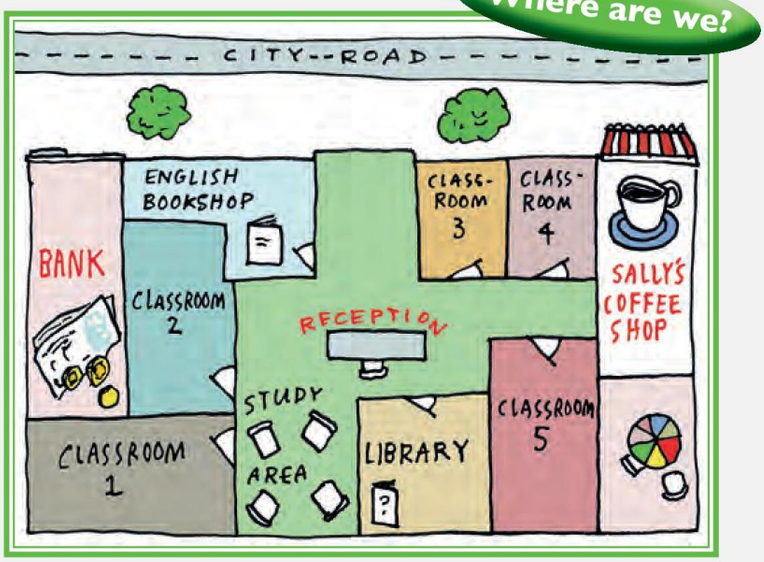
8 A Student A: you are new to this town/city. Ask your partner questions to find out this information.

1 You want to know what time the shops open.
2 You want to know where the nearest train station is.
3 You need to exchange some money. Find out where to go.

Excuse me, …

B Student A: now answer Student B's questions using the information below.

The Speakout School of English



We are open:
Mon–Sat: 8a.m.–10p.m.
Sun: 8a.m.–1p.m.

Join the Speakout School of English and learn English fast!

Lesson 9.5

7 B Countries

A Chile
B France
C Japan
D Australia

https://polcet.edu.vn

COMMUNICATION BANK

Lesson 8.3

6 A **Student B: you are in a clothes shop. Student A starts the conversation.**

1 Ask for a formal shirt.
2 Say you need a white one.
3 Thank him/her for the shirt.
4 Say it fits. Say 'I'll take this one.'
5 Say you want to pay by credit card.
6 Say yes (to enter your PIN).
7 Say thank you and goodbye.

B **Student B: you work in an electronics shop. You start the conversation.**

1 Offer to help.
2 Ask what type.
3 Say 'They are over there.'
4 Ask if it is what he/she is looking for.
5 Say 'There are some cheaper ones over there.'
6 Ask how he/she wants to pay.
7 Say thank you and goodbye.

Lesson 11.4

2 A **Answers**

1 In the USA, a child watches TV for an average of **4** hours a day.
2 In parts of the UK, more than **60** percent of primary school children have a TV in their bedroom.
3 The average person spends **3.5** years eating and **12** years watching TV.
4 Children under three years old who watch more than **1** hour of TV a day may have problems concentrating at school when they are older.
5 In the USA, some families spend only **3.5** minutes a week having meaningful conversations with their children. Those children spend **1,600** minutes a week watching TV.

Lesson 12.1

7 B **Answers**

1 b) **2** b) **3** b) **4** a) **5** a) **6** a)

Lesson 7.3

8 A **Student B: answer Student A's questions using the information below.**



B **You are new to this school. Ask questions to find out this information.**

1 You want to know where the nearest coffee shop to the school is.
2 You want to know where you can buy an English dictionary.
3 You want to know what time the school closes.

Excuse me, …

Lesson 10.3

7 A **Student B: you are a hotel receptionist. Listen to what Student A says, then:**

1 Greet the guest.
2 Apologise. Offer to send someone to the room to look into the problem.
3 Say 'You're welcome' and apologise again.

B **Student B: you are a customer in a restaurant. You start the conversation.**

1 Get the waiter's attention.
2 Say you have a problem: you asked for pasta with chicken. You were given pasta with fish.
3 Thank the waiter.

Lesson 10.3

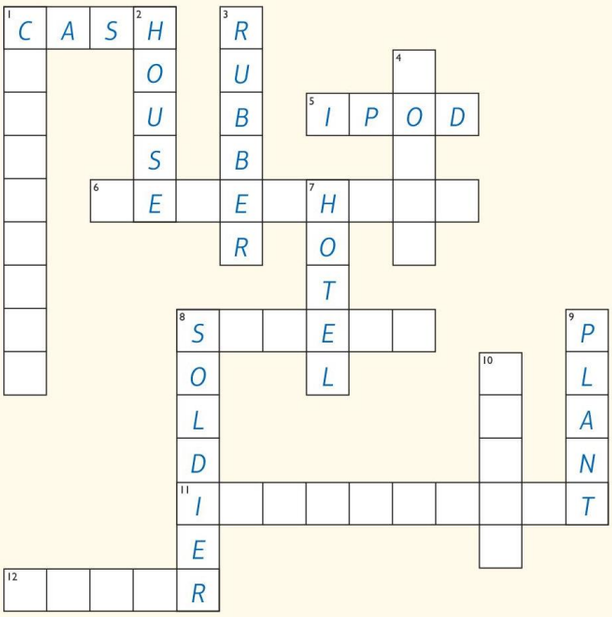
8 B **Student A: you are a student at the Noparlo School of English. You are going to complain to the director of the school. Choose four of the problems in Exercise 8A on page 103. Think about what you are going to say. Use these expressions:**

I'm afraid I have a complaint.
There's (also) a problem with …
Can you look into it?

https://polcet.edu.vn

Lesson 8.1

4 C Student B: write definitions for the completed words with the prompts.



Down

2 place / people live
a place where people live
3 material / use / make car tyres and chewing gum
7 place / stay when you are travelling
8 person / fight / for his country in wars
9 thing / grows in the earth and is usually green

Across

1 thing / use / pay for something (not a credit card)
5 thing / use / download and listen to music

D Ask Student A for definitions for the missing words.

Down: 1, 4, and 10
Across: 6, 8, 11 and 12

Lesson 12.3

8 A Student B: you are a client. Tell the concierge:

- you want to go to the best restaurant in town. Ask him/her to recommend one.
- you want tickets to the theatre. Ask if he/she can get six seats for tonight.

B Student B: now you are a concierge. Listen and respond to your client's requests. Ask for more time if necessary. Your client wants to:

- go shopping for clothes.
- visit a film studio and meet some stars.

Lesson 12.2

9 C Fact file

Birth name: Aung San Suu Kyi

Birth place: Rangoon (now Yangon), Burma (Myanmar)

Date: 19 June 1945

Childhood/Education:
Father killed when she was young. Grew up with her mother and two brothers in Rangoon. Educated in a Methodist English school. Noted for having a talent with languages. Moved to India in 1960, graduated in Politics. Continued her studies at Oxford University, UK.

Early career:
Moved back to Burma in 1988 and entered politics calling for a democratic government. The military took power and Aung San was arrested. Offered freedom if she left the country, but she refused.

Rise to fame:
Continued her non-violent action for democracy and refused to leave the country. In the 1990 election her party received 59 percent of the votes, but Aung San was kept under house arrest causing an international outcry. Awarded the Nobel Peace Prize in 1991.

Later life:
Spent more than 15 years under house arrest in Rangoon. Spent her time reading and playing the piano and sometimes meeting with diplomats. Wouldn't leave the country even when her husband was dying of cancer in 1999. Released from house arrest in 2010. Travelled the world as an ambassador for political freedom and peace.

https://polcet.edu.vn

AUDIO SCRIPTS

Lesson 1.1 Recording 1.1

1 How many people are in your family?
2 How often do you see your parents?
3 Do you enjoy spending time with your family?
4 When was your last family celebration?
5 Who do you live with?
6 How often do you eat out with friends?
7 Where does your best friend live?

Lesson 1.2 Recording 1.2

Story 1

My boyfriend and I were at a restaurant and I don't know how he did it, but he put the engagement ring in my salad. I didn't see it and I put it in my mouth. I think he panicked and tried to stop me. Anyway, luckily I felt something hard as I bit into my food and I didn't swallow it. I took it out, saw what it was and accepted! So that was how we got engaged. It was almost a disaster. We got married one month later.

Story 2

We decided to go on holiday in Egypt as we both liked diving. This was me and my girlfriend at the time. So we went on a dive and I proposed to her underwater. I didn't say anything. I just gave her the ring while we were, I don't know, ten feet under. Luckily, she smiled. We got back on the boat and she said yes.

Story 3

My husband and I are video artists. We met at art school and honestly we fell in love immediately. And what he did was he made a funny two-minute video, he put it on YouTube and sent a link to me. And it was him proposing. And in the video there was music and then all of our friends suddenly appeared, singing and dancing. It was amazing and such a surprise. I watched it and then I surprised him. I accepted his proposal, but I didn't tell him. Instead I made a video of me saying yes.

Lesson 1.3 Recording 1.5

Conversation 1

W = Woman D = Davide R = Rachel

W: Hi, Davide. This is my friend, Rachel.
D: Hi, Rachel. Pleased to meet you. Would you like a drink?
R: Sorry. What did you say?
D: Would you like a drink, Rachel?
R: Oh. I'd love a coffee, thank you.
D: So, do you work here?
R: No, I'm a student.
D: Are you here on holiday then?
R: Er … yes.
D: Where exactly do you come from?
R: I'm from Beckley, near Oxford.
D: OK, er, I'll just go and get the coffee.

Conversation 2

W = Woman F = Felicia

W: Hi, Felicia. Nice day, isn't it?
F: Yes, it's lovely.
W: Did you have a good weekend?
F: Yes, it was OK. I didn't do much.
W: Did you watch the match last night?
F: Yes, it was terrible. We lost 3-0.
W: Oh no! I'm sorry to hear that.
F: That's OK. I'll see you later.
W: Yes, see you soon.

Lesson 1.4 Recording 1.7

I've known Michelle for a long time and we met when we were at school together. We were about eleven years old and I had to show her to her peg to hang up her coat and we've been mates ever since. Er … we get on really well. She's one of those people that if you haven't seen [them] for six months, six days, it's the same. It's like time hasn't passed. We've got lots of things in common. We play tennis together. The only problem with Michelle is that she's a bit competitive and we've fallen out over tennis. Sometimes if she wins, I haven't spoken to her … erm … and she's just one of those people you can rely on. She's sort of like number one in my phone book. Erm … and yes, she's a great person. We have a real laugh together.

Lesson 2.1 Recording 2.2

A: Today we're looking at how companies motivate their staff. Sarah, can you tell us more?
B: Absolutely. Internet companies are famous for this type of thing. At Yahoo there's a free bus ride to work for employees. There's also a dentist and a hairdresser at the office.
A: Makes life easier for employees …
B: Exactly. And, wait for it, one day a month the staff watch films together.
A: Great ideas.
B: Yep. Now at Google, lunch is free, and you can also get a cheap massage at the office.
A: Wow.
B: And other companies are bringing in new ideas, too. A company called Pontiflex in New York created a nap room, where employees could sleep for 15 minutes.
A: Nice idea.
B: At several companies we're hearing that the relationship between bosses and employees is changing. At one company, the boss writes thank you notes to employees. At another, the staff does a job swap two days a year. So a senior manager might clean floors for the day, and the cleaner can sit in an air-conditioned office.
A: Does that motivate everybody?
B: Well, it helps employees to see what everyone else is doing in the company, which I think is … very valuable and of course ….

Lesson 2.1 Recording 2.3

Conversation 1

M = Man I = Interviewer

M: Hi. I work at Kinko's coffee shop across the street. But, er, at the moment I'm having a break here in the music shop.
I: And what are you doing on your break?
M: I'm choosing my free CD for the week.
I: Free CD? Can you tell us a bit more? Why are you doing this?
M: Sure. Kinko's, the coffee shop, has an agreement with the music shop. The employees at the music shop get free coffee at Kinko's. They all come in during their break. And we get one free CD a week from the music shop.
I: Great!
M: We all know each other and it works really well.

Conversation 2

W = Woman I = Interviewer

W: So, this is the clothes shop. And this is the study area.
I: Right. So you have a study area?
W: Yeah. As you can see, David, over there, is studying. And these two are doing an online course.
I: And this is during company hours? Does the boss know about this?
W: It's the boss' idea. The company pays for employees to do courses. So during our breaks or after seven when the shop closes, we can stay on and study.
I: That's excellent. And are you studying at the moment?
W: Yeah, but I'm not studying anything connected with fashion.
I: What are you studying?
W: I'm studying history.
I: And the company pays?
W: The company pays. It pays for about six of us. I think six of us are doing online courses.
I: Brilliant.

Conversation 3

E = Employee I = Interviewer

E: Hi there. I work for a software company.
I: And what are you doing now?
E: Well, I'm checking my emails at the moment because I need to see what work I have to do today.
I: At one o'clock?
E: Well, the company has flexible hours. You can arrive when you want and go home at any time.
I: That sounds good.
E: It's great. We get a salary for good work, not for the time we spend in the office. So, really, the important thing is to do your job well. That's what the boss says, anyway!

https://polcet.edu.vn

Lesson 2.3 Recording 2.5

I = Interviewer M = Man

I: Can you tell us a little about what you do and what you like about your job?
M: Yes. I'm a marine biologist. I work mainly in the sea and also in the lab. One good thing about my job is that I like working outside.
I: I see.
M: In fact, I can't stand sitting at a desk all day. Um. What else?
I: Maybe you get to travel …
M: I travel a lot and I absolutely love travelling, particularly in South America and Australia.
I: Right. And what about your colleagues, people you work with?
M: Actually, most of my time is spent alone, which kind of suits me. I don't like working in a team. I prefer working alone.
I: Really? And what about the type of work?
M: It's interesting – there's a lot of lab work, but it's a very practical job. You're working with animals and plant life the whole time. And, y'know, I don't mind getting my hands dirty. That's important. Also, I'm keen on learning new things – and you do learn all the time in this job. You're always discovering new things.
I: That's great. It sounds wonderful.
M: I couldn't do an office job because I hate working under pressure. And I'm not very keen on working for a company. I just want to be my own boss.
I: So, you found the right job for you.
M: I found the right job for me, yes.

Lesson 2.4 Recording 2.8

A = Alistair Z = Zeinab

A: Zeinab, can I ask you a few questions about your work/life balance?
Z: Of course.
A: OK. First question: how much time do you spend sleeping?
Z: Lots! Probably about eight or nine hours a night!
A: Really?!
Z: Yep.
A: OK. And what about studying?
Z: Well, I suppose usually about five or six hours a day, although it depends. I mean if I have an exam coming up or something, it's probably more.
A: And do you ever have a holiday?
Z: Oh yeah. Probably twice a year I try and go abroad and just completely relax.
A: OK. What about your weekends? Do you ever study at the weekend?
Z: Not usually, but once in a while I open a book!
A: Right. And do you think you have a good work/life balance?
Z: I think so, yeah. I'm not too stressed or anything.
A: Easy life being a student.
Z: Oh yeah!

Lesson 3.1 Recording 3.1

P = Presenter R = Rafael C = Carmen

P: You probably think there's nothing to do for free in New York, right? Well, New York may be one of the most expensive cities in the world, but if you look carefully, there are still lots of fun things to do that will cost you next to nothing, or may even be free. We sent two journalists, Rafael and Carmen, out onto the streets of New York with just $20 to spend. Their challenge was to organise a great day out, but not go over their budget. Let's listen to their plans. Rafael?
R: Yes.
P: Rafael, hi, can you tell us what you're planning to do with your $20?
R: Hi, yes, well, actually I'm going to start the day with a delicious bagel from a great bagel shop I've discovered on 3rd Avenue. They are really cheap and tasty. Then I'm going to spend the morning in Central Park. The park is filled with free events and street musicians, so I'm just going to listen to music and watch people. In the afternoon, I'm going to the Museum of American Finance. You have to pay to go in, but I'm really interested to find out about the history of American banking. After that, I'm taking the Staten Island Ferry. It's free, and it's a great way to see views of New York from the water. In the evening, I'm going to see some live music on 2nd Avenue. I'll need to buy one drink, but the music is free.
P: That sounds great, Rafael. Enjoy the day.
R: Thank you. I'm sure I will.
P: OK, so Rafael has chosen bagels, Central Park, the Finance Museum and live music in the evening. Let's hear about what Carmen is planning for her day. Carmen?
C: Hi.
P: Carmen, can you tell us what you've planned for your day in New York City?
C: Yes, of course. I'm really excited, because I'm going to the High Line to see some sculptures, and just walk around and see what's happening.
P: The High Line? What's that?
C: It's an old railway track. Now, it's used as a park, and there are lots of different activities and artists there. It's a really peaceful and beautiful place, right in the middle of the city. Lots of people go jogging there.
I'm not going running, though. I'm going to see a free art exhibition. After that, I'm going to Times Square.
It's such a famous place, and there are a lot of tourists there, but I really like the atmosphere, and there's an Italian restaurant that does the best cheesecake just nearby. So, I'm going to have something to eat, and then in the evening I'm meeting with a friend and we're going to a free hip-hop class. I'm going to learn to dance like a real New Yorker.
P: Wow, that sounds good. So, first you're going to eat cheesecake, and then you're going dancing. Right?
C: Exactly!
P: That sounds like a great plan. So, two great plans there. Which would you choose?

Lesson 3.3 Recording 3.4

Conversation 1

A: Como's Restaurant.
B: Hello, I'd like to book a table for four on Saturday night. Around eight thirty if possible.
A: Let me just have a look. This Saturday?
B: Yes.
A: Saturday the fifteenth. Sorry, we're completely full on Saturday. There's nothing at all.
B: Ah, what about Sunday?
A: Sunday, Sunday. Um … the best I can do is a table at nine o'clock.
B: Nine o'clock? You haven't got anything earlier?
A: Nothing at all, I'm afraid.
B: OK, let's go ahead. Nine o'clock.
A: Can I take your name, please?
B: The table is for Jack Hopper.
A: Jack … hang on … can you repeat that, please?
Did you say Jack Hopper?
B: Yes. H-o-double p-e-r.
A: OK, that's all booked. Table for four, nine o'clock, Sunday.
B: Great. Thank you.
A: Thank you.

Conversation 2

A: RSA Theatre. Jenny speaking. How can I help you?
B: Hello, I was wondering if you could help me. I've booked tickets for the show on the tenth of June, but I'd like to change the date.
A: OK, one moment. Can I just check? What's the name, please?
B: The tickets are booked in the name of James King.
A: Sorry, I didn't catch that. Did you say King?
B: James King.
A: OK, yes. Two tickets for June the tenth. What date would you like to change to?
B: What dates do you still have seats for?
A: There's nothing on the twelfth or thirteenth. There are two seats for the eleventh, but they're separate. We have …
B: Sorry, can you slow down, please? Two seats for?
A: Sorry, two seats for the eleventh, but they aren't together. We can do you two seats together on the fourteenth of June.
B: Fourteenth of June. That's fine.
A: OK. I'll just go ahead and book that.

Conversation 3

A: Hello?
B: Hello, it's Mary here. … Hello? Can you hear me OK? It's Mary here.
A: Oh hi, Mary. How are you?
B: Very well, thanks. And you?
A: Yeah, fine.
B: Are you doing anything on Saturday? Because a few of us are going out for dinner.
A: Sorry, Mary, can you speak up, please? I'm at the station and I can't hear a thing.
B: D'you want to go for dinner on Saturday?
A: Oh, that sounds nice.
B: There's going to be a few of us, Mohammed and Clare, and Robin.

https://polcet.edu.vn

AUDIO SCRIPTS

A: That sounds like fun.
B: Are you free?
A: I think so.
B: Alright. Eight-thirty, Saturday. Pauly's.
A: OK. Pauly's on Saturday at eight-thirty.
B: That's right. Great. See you soon.
A: OK. Thanks for calling.

Conversation 4

A: Withertons. Who's calling?
B: Hello, this is Kim. Kim Brower. Can I speak to Alexandra Sanders, please?
A: I'm afraid she's not here at the moment.
B: Ah, do you know when she'll be back? I've tried her phone three or four times and left messages, but she hasn't called back.
A: She's visiting a customer. She should be back this evening. Can I take a message?
B: It's about dinner tonight. I've had to cancel because of work.
A: OK. I'll ask her to call you back.
B: Thanks.
A: Does she have your number?
B: It's 01823 2766.
A: Can you repeat that, please?
B: 01823 2766.

Lesson 3.4 Recording 3.8

OK. I'm going to tell you about how to go local in Pisa, Italy. I'm going to take you on a tour that only the locals would know about. First of all, we're starting the day with a coffee and a fresh pastry from a little bar near the Vettovaglie market. I love this place because it's where all the locals who are selling on the market go to have their coffee. And the coffee is delicious. We're going to spend the morning walking through the market and the old part of the city near the university. Afterwards, for lunch, we're going to one of the best restaurants I know. It's called Le Bandierine and they specialise in home-made spaghetti and seafood, and we're going to have a fantastic meal there. In the afternoon, we're planning to go a little outside Pisa to San Rossore park. It's a beautiful place to walk, but they also have horse races there, so we can have some fun watching the horses. In the evening, we're going back towards the Leaning Tower for an early evening drink to look at the Piazza dei Miracoli as the sun goes down, when all the tourists have gone home. We'll finish the evening with a wonderful pizza from a restaurant on the other side of the city. I'm sure you'll love it. It's going to be a day to remember.

Lesson 4.1 Recording 4.3

I = Interviewer M = Mario

I: So Mario, can you tell us how you used your talent in your job?
M: Um, well, I've always enjoyed cooking. I come from a big Italian family and I learnt to cook by watching my mother in the kitchen.
I: But no one knew you could cook, right?
M: That's right, no one knew. I only cooked at home, but I did it well. Then in my twenties, I started to make meals for my friends. And, well, I was working in an office. And I brought food to office parties, that kind of thing.
I: Then you had an idea …
M: I had the idea to sell my food at work.
I: So your colleagues buy your food every day.
M: Yeah, I started selling it to friends and colleagues, and then to other people at work. I prepared all kinds of things: bread, pasta, cakes.
I: And then you made a decision.
M: Yeah, office work was OK, but I wanted to do something more interesting. So eventually, I asked the boss if I could open a café in the office.
I: And he was happy to …
M: He agreed. They gave me a room. Now I bring food there every day. We have chairs and tables. And now that's my job.
I: Have you ever thought, 'Oh, I prefer my old office job. This is too difficult.'?
M: Never. I've never thought that because this is what I love doing: cooking and preparing different menus. Really, it's the best decision I've ever made.
I: And have you thought about expanding the business, maybe opening a restaurant one day?
M: I've thought about it, but it's a long way away!

Lesson 4.3 Recording 4.6

G = Glynn M = Magda

G: Magda, many of my students are too shy to speak in front of the class. They worry about making mistakes.
M: Yes, this is a common problem. Teachers should give students time to prepare. Tell them the question and give them a few minutes to think about what they'll say. They can take notes first.
G: That's a good idea.
M: Also, let them practise in groups before they speak in front of everyone. This'll give them confidence.
G: Yes, you're right. I do usually give them a chance to practise first. Now what about those students who have problems listening to English?
M: Problems listening. That's common, too.
G: Native speakers – for example people from the UK or Australia or the States – speak really fast and it's difficult to understand them.
M: Yes. Students should practise listening to native speakers. Fortunately, if they have the internet, there are lots of opportunities. They can listen to the news and to podcasts. But even better is to go on YouTube and watch film clips. When we can see the people speaking, it makes it easier. We can watch the mouth and the hands and the body language and it helps us to understand.
G: And using subtitles? Some teachers say we shouldn't use them. Ever!
M: I'm not sure that's a good idea. Subtitles can be a real help. Students can see the differences between the spelling and the pronunciation of words. They can see which words are swallowed …
G: I suppose so.
M: For me, students should use subtitles maybe the second time they watch.
G: OK, and what about … students' pronunciation. They have a lot of problems …

Lesson 4.4 Recording 4.7

A: OK, well, I think the most important invention is probably the internet. For me, it's number one.
B: Uhuh.
A: It's opened up the world and we can get lots of information for free now. And it joins people together from all different cultures and countries.
B: That's true, but I think there are more important inventions. Really simple things that are so common we forget about them.
A: Like what?
B: Well, things like aspirin. It's not really an invention, I suppose, but can you imagine life without aspirin?
A: Umm, not really.
B: And all the other medicines we use.
A: Antibiotics to cure illnesses. That's true actually. Painkillers.
B: And another invention that I see as really important is the car.
A: Oh yeah, definitely.
B: Before the car, travel was so slow it took days to get anywhere.
A: That's true. People went everywhere by horse, didn't they?
B: Yeah, and so the car opened up possibilities …

Lesson 5.2 Recording 5.3

1 These days, we always expect to hear English in tourist areas. Most people working in tourism speak it, but I always want to talk to local people and many of them don't speak English. So I try to learn a few words of the language, especially 'please' and 'thank you', and I always take a small dictionary.
2 I love walking when I go on holiday … 'cause I think … I think you see more, so I always take a really good pair of walking boots.
3 I think a good digital camera is important when you travel. I always take a lot of photos. And I also take binoculars.
4 When I'm not travelling for work, I usually spend my holidays in a warm place, so I always take a sun hat. But when I go somewhere during the winter or rainy season, I always take waterproof clothes.
5 I think it's a good idea to buy a really good suitcase. And when you pack, leave enough space for souvenirs. On the other hand, I enjoy travelling in wild places, so often I take a backpack not a suitcase. If you decide to go walking, a backpack is much easier to carry.

https://polcet.edu.vn

6 It's best to avoid carrying too much money because you don't want to look like a rich tourist! 'Cause of this, I always take a money belt on holiday.
7 I need to write things down to remember them so I take a notebook and pen.

Lesson 5.3 Recording 5.4

1 To get to Argentina, you wait at the corner for the bus. It takes you down Avenida das Cataratas and right into Avenida Mercosul. The bus goes straight on for about 25 minutes. Cross the bridge and you're in Argentina.
2 To see the Iguaçu Falls on the Brazilian side, you turn right and just go straight on down Avenida das Cataratas and Highway 469 and the Falls are in front of you. You can't miss them – they're the biggest in the world!
3 To get to Paraguay, you have to go left. You go along the main road through the park past the trees. Then you turn right and you're on Avenida Kubitschek. Let's see. From there you keep going until you reach Highway 277. Go left. The bridge is at the end of the highway. Cross the bridge and you're in Paraguay.

Lesson 5.3 Recording 5.5

Conversation 1

A: Excuse me. We're trying to get to the carnival. Is this the right bus stop?
B: Yes, but you don't need the bus. It's very close.
A: Oh! Can we walk?
B: Yes, it takes about ten minutes from here. Just go straight on. You'll hear the music!
A: OK. Thank you very much.

Conversation 2

A: Excuse me, can you help me? I'm looking for the Plaza Hotel. Is this the right way?
B: Um … Plaza Hotel, Plaza Hotel. Yes, keep going, past the cinema and take the first left.
A: OK.
B: Then keep going for about fifteen minutes until you reach the end of the road. And you'll see the sign for the hotel. You can't miss it.
A: OK. Can you show me on the map?
B: Sure.

Conversation 3

A: Excuse me, we want to get to The Grand Motel. Is it far?
B: Um … sorry, I've no idea. Jim, do you know?
C: What?
B: The Grand Motel?
C: The Grand Motel? Yeah, it's just over there. Just go to the end of this street. Go left and go past the … um … there's a restaurant. Go past the restaurant and it's on the left.
A: On the left. So I need to go to the end of the street, turn left, go past the restaurant and it's on the left.
C: Yeah, that's it.
A: Thanks a lot.

Lesson 5.4 Recording 5.8

OK, well, we would like to go to Easter Island. It is very isolated, very far from other places, and the nearest country is Chile, over two thousand miles away. We are going to travel there by plane and stay with different families and the trip is going to take three months. We want to experience the local culture, their music, food and way of life. So our plan is to speak to the local people about these things and to film them. We hope to find out about their traditions and to see what they think of their history. Well, finally, my husband and I always wanted to go to Easter Island. I read about it when I was a child and I saw pictures of these amazing stone heads on the island. So for us, this is the journey of our dreams.

Lesson 6.1 Recording 6.1

1 Do you live in a town, or by the sea?
2 How long have you lived there?
3 How long have you lived in the house you live in now?
4 What is the name of your best friend?
5 How long have you known him/her?
6 Do you work or study?
7 How long have you worked or studied where you are now?
8 What hobby do you enjoy?
9 How long have you done it for?
10 Do you have a bicycle or a car?
11 How long have you had it?

Lesson 6.2 Recording 6.3

I = Interviewer S = Sue

I: Sue, what are the latest food trends?
S: We have lots of interesting developments, and even possible solutions for world problems related to food.
I: Great. So can you kind of …
S: Well, the key question is always what to eat, and here we may see some changes, things that you might not understand as food groups.
I: Can you give an example?
S: An example is insects.
I: As a food group?
S: Well, in Latin America, Asia and Africa, people have eaten insects for thousands of years, but it's only now that we in the West are seeing what a good food source they are. Insects are rich in protein, low in fat, and easy to farm.
I: So spiders and ants may be on the menu?
S: We might see them on menus in the West. Now, technology will also play a part in the future of food. Scientists have already found ways to create meat in the lab.
I: Right, but it tastes awful, doesn't it?
S: It tastes awful now, but maybe it won't in the future. And as well as meat made in a lab, we're also looking at ways to make proteins out of things like mud and wood and also seaweed.
I: It seems incredible that mud might be something we can eat.
S: Well, it's the same for seaweed, which again is easy to farm because it's everywhere. Um. Other developments on your kitchen table include an intelligent knife.
I: What's that?
S: An intelligent knife will tell you all about the food it's cutting. So, say you cut a slice of meat, the knife will tell you how much protein and fat is in the meat, where it's from, how old it is.
I: That's amazing.
S: Really giving people more information about their food.

Lesson 6.3 Recording 6.6

Conversation 1

D = Doctor W = Woman

D: Hello. I'm Dr Andrews. Now, what's the matter?
W: Well, doctor, I feel terrible. I get these headaches and I feel sick.
D: Oh. How long have you had this problem?
W: A few weeks now. And I can't sleep at night because my head hurts.
D: You can't sleep?
W: That's right.
D: And are you very worried or under pressure at the moment?
W: No, I don't think so.
D: Do you have a healthy diet?
W: Hmm. Quite healthy.
D: Do you drink tea or coffee?
W: Yes, I do.
D: How much?
W: Tea? Probably about eight cups, or ten.
D: A day?
W: Yes.
D: I see. And has that changed in the last few weeks?
W: Not really.
D: OK. Well, the first thing is I think you should stop drinking so much tea and coffee. Try to drink just one small cup a day. I'll give you some painkillers for the headaches. Take two of these three times a day. I don't think it's anything to worry about, but if …

Conversation 2

D = Doctor M = Man

D: Good morning. How can I help?
M: Well, I'm worried about my foot.
D: Your foot?
M: Yes. It hurts when I walk.
D: I see. Did you do anything to it? Did you have an accident?
M: Um. Well, sort of.
D: What happened?
M: I kicked a wall.
D: I see. When did you do that?
M: About a week ago.
D: OK. Did you go to hospital?
M: No.
D: Can I have a look?
M: Yes, of course.
D: Where does it hurt? Here?
M: Argh. Yes, there.

https://polcet.edu.vn

D: Can you move it?
M: Yes, a little, but it's very painful.
D: Hmm. I think it might be broken. It's nothing to worry about, but I think you should go to the hospital for an X-ray. I'll write you a note and if …

Lesson 6.4 Recording 6.8

To get healthy, you need a combination of things. You need the right diet. You need to exercise. You need to sleep seven or eight hours. Then there are other things related to lifestyle: how many friends you have, how happy your relationships are. These are really important and they affect your general health. In this person's case, there are some changes he can make. For example, he needs to do some exercise. I understand that his back gives him problems, which is quite common in someone of his age. But he could really help himself by doing more activity. He could try going for walks or cycling. Also, six hours of TV every day is too much. He should spend some of that time exercising or seeing his friends. He must lose weight, so maybe he could eat less meat, perhaps once a day instead of twice. Now, some of these changes are related to the people around him. For example, if it's his wife who does the cooking, she'll need to …

Lesson 7.1 Recording 7.1

Part 1

P = Presenter J = Jessica

P: Now, have you ever daydreamed about changing your life forever, about giving up your job and setting off for a distant country where you could find love and happiness? Well, Jessica Fox did just that and she's on the line now to tell us about her journey. Jessica, welcome to the programme.
J: Oh, thank you for having me. It's a pleasure to be here.
P: Now, you started your journey in Los Angeles. Tell me about your life there. What was your job? What sort of lifestyle did you have?
J: Ahh, I was consulting for NASA. I was doing what I loved. I was living in a city that I adored and I had an extraordinary network of friends. There was, I can only describe it as like a … an abstract taste that I was missing. And so I really began … it was about a year … I began daydreaming of something quite different.
P: Did you have an actual vision of what the change might be?
J: I would often sit down in my studio and just dream of different things, and usually they turned into the screenplays I was writing, and this dream kept on coming back of working in a used bookshop by the sea. And I …
P: Working in a used bookshop by the sea?
J: In Scotland, yeah.
P: In Scotland, right. Had you ever had any connection with used bookshops or Scotland before?
J: None, absolutely none.

Part 2

P: And so did you set about doing something to realise the dream?
J: Yeah, it happened quite quickly, actually. I typed in 'used bookshop, Scotland', into Google and Wigtown came up, Scotland's national book town of, I think, it was about sixteen bookshops and I thought 'Oh my gosh, one of them, hopefully, will take me in for a kind of live/work exchange while I was on holiday and I could realise this dream of …'
P: So, did you just send an email to these bookshops and ask them to take you in?
J: I sent one email to the first bookshop on the list, which was The Bookshop, and it was the largest used bookshop in Scotland, and within a couple of emails this sort of extraordinary, generous bookshop owner said 'Yes, I host a lot of other artists. Come on over for the festival.'
P: And so you came over and you stayed at The Bookshop, and what sort of a bookshop was it? What sort of impression did it make on you when you first arrived?
J: I would describe it as, if Harry Potter had a bookshop, this would be it.
P: And what about the bookshop owner? Did you get on with him?
J: I did. You know I was … I was here for a specific reason. I really wanted to get away from things, I wanted to write, so when I first met the bookshop owner I, it was just … it was a friendly, a kind of a friendly relationship I had with him. I didn't get to know him very much until towards the end of my stay …

Part 3

P: Your month ended and you went back to LA. Did you find yourself missing the shop and missing the owner?
J: Yeah, I loved the shop, I loved the town itself and the people there. And it took me a while to admit that it was actually most of all the bookshop owner that I was missing.
P: And how did you find out that he was missing you too?
J: We would correspond over email and Skype and I'd get lovely packages from him with things I missed about Wigtown.
P: Such as?
J: Such as, this is terrible, such as the biscuits, digestives, the digestive biscuits I absolutely adore, um, and a lot of the sweets and movies. I fell in love with Scottish films.
P: So your relationship deepened? Did you think, 'Well maybe I'm falling in love with this man'?
J: Yeah and I think the reason why it took so long for me to admit was that it meant a radical life shift. And luckily my job shifted at NASA so suddenly I had this freedom of being able to be anywhere in the world that I wanted. And I just thought, 'Well, why let all my characters in my movies have all the fun?' I really wanted to jump in and try this. This was a true challenge, an adventure.
P: So, tell me about your life now, living above the bookshop in Scotland.
J: Well, right now there's a heater underneath my legs – it is absolutely freezing – there is ice crawling up the windows, but it's very cosy, um, and the snow has just hit here, it's beautiful outside, and Wigtown remains, four years on, remains as charming as when I first came.
P: … and how is it going with the bookshop owner?
J: Wonderful! You couldn't find a more beautiful place, and you couldn't find more excellent people, and you know … the love of my life is here so …
P: Jessica, it's been wonderful to speak to you.
J: Thank you so much for having me.

Lesson 7.3 Recording 7.5

Conversation 1

A: Excuse me, where do I register for my course?
B: Do you know where the main reception is?
A: Sorry?
B: The main reception.
A: Oh, yes.
B: The registration desk is there.
A: Thank you so much.

Conversation 2

A: Excuse me, where's the study centre?
B: It's next to the cafeteria.
A: The cafeteria? Where's that?
B: Follow me. I'll take you there.
A: Thank you. That's very kind.

Conversation 3

A: Where can I use the internet?
B: You can use the computers in the library or in the study centre.
A: Do I have to pay?
B: No.
A: So, it's free for students.
B: Yes, that's right.

Conversation 4

A: Excuse me, what time is the library open?
B: It's open every day, from 9a.m. until 6p.m.
A: Did you say 'every day'?
B: Yes, that's right. Every day, from nine in the morning until six in the evening.
A: Thank you.

Conversation 5

A: Could you help me? Where can I get a new student card? I've lost mine.
B: OK. If you go to the main reception, you can get a new one.
A: Thank you.

Conversation 6

A: Excuse me, can you help me find my classroom?
B: Sure. What number is it?
A: 301.
B: OK. You need to go up to the third floor. And it's on the right.

Conversation 7

A: Where can I buy a notebook?
B: There's a stationery shop downstairs.
A: Sorry?
B: There's a stationery shop downstairs.
A: Thank you so much.

https://polcet.edu.vn

Conversation 8

A: Can you help me?
B: Yes, maybe.
A: I need to find out about my accommodation. Can you tell me where to go?
B: Accommodation? I think you have to go to the welfare office, over there, next to the bookshop.
A: Thank you.

Lesson 7.4 Recording 7.8

Well, when I first arrived in the USA, it was a very interesting time for me. The biggest problem was that I couldn't really speak the language very well. I learnt English at school and at university in Poland, but it's very different when you are living in the country and you need to speak it all the time. I felt very nervous when I had to speak to American people, like in the shops or when you meet friends, and I couldn't understand what people were saying to me. It was terrible. I used to stay at home, and watch loads of television to try and understand what people were saying. Luckily, I made friends very quickly with some American girls, so we used to go out together, and that really helped me. After a few months my English was much better. I felt more confident. And now I talk to people all the time, but it was hard at the beginning.

Lesson 8.2 Recording 8.2

Speaker 1

I work as a nanny, looking after children aged two, three, and five. I'm actually a live-in nanny. I live with the family. I came into the job with my eyes open. I knew it would be hard work, because children can be difficult, though of course they're fun, too. Also, we work long hours, and too many of us do extra work like cleaning and cooking when we should only look after the children. Nannies, particularly live-in nannies, aren't paid enough. Some of us need two jobs. We should earn enough just from being a nanny because working with children is a really important job. It's like teaching. It affects the future.

Speaker 2

I'm a firefighter. It's one of the most dangerous jobs that exists. Really, it's too dangerous to be paid so little. People see us relaxed and calm and maybe we go and rescue a cat from a tree and people think 'oh they earn too much, their job is easy'. But when there's a serious fire, we have to be ready, even if it's just once a year. We risk our lives to save people, sometimes stupid people who fell asleep with a cigarette in their mouth or forgot to switch off the oven. You know, we save people, we save buildings, we save businesses. Anything and everything can burn down, and that's why we're so important.

Speaker 3

I'm a research biologist. I work on finding solutions to some of the world's major problems, such as disease and hunger. The thing is, it's always difficult to get funding, to get enough money to actually do the research. Some of our projects are very expensive. They can cost millions of dollars, and it can take years before you see results. So, actually I'm not asking for a bigger salary for myself, but I'd like more money for the lab. Too many scientists spend too much time applying for grants asking for money rather than actually doing their job in the lab. When things go well for us, the whole world benefits, so I think this work should be better funded.

Lesson 8.3 Recording 8.4

Conversation 1

S = Shop assistant W = Woman

S: Can I help you?
W: No, thanks. I'm just looking.
S: OK, just let me know if you need anything.
W: Thanks.

Conversation 2

S = Shop assistant M = Man

S: Hi there. Are you looking for anything in particular?
M: Yeah, do you sell those things that soldiers wear? Er … it's like a jacket.
S: Um, a type of jacket?
M: Yeah, a light green jacket with lots of pockets.
S: Ah, you mean a flak jacket?
M: Yes.
S: They're just on your left.
M: Ah, yes. Thank you. Can I try this on?
S: Of course.
M: Where's the fitting room?
S: Just over there.
M: Thanks.

Conversation 3

M = Man S = Shop assistant

M: Excuse me. Do you have one of these in a larger size? It doesn't fit.
S: Is that the Large? I'll just go and check for you. I'm sorry. This is all we've got in stock at the moment. There are some other T-shirts over there on the other side. There might be some Extra Large sizes there.

Conversation 4

W = Woman S = Shop assistant

W: Hello. I was wondering if you've got any of that stuff you use for cleaning swimming pools.
S: Um … yeah, we usually sell a liquid cleaner. You pour it into the pool. There's one here.
W: Can I have a look?
S: Yep.
W: How much is it?
S: This one's twenty-eight pounds ninety-nine for a litre bottle.

Conversation 5

S = Shop assistant M = Man W = Woman

S: Hi. Are you paying by cash or credit card?
M: Credit card.
S: Can you enter your PIN, please? Thanks. Here's your card.
M: Thanks.
S: Thank you. Who's next, please?
W: Do you take Mastercard?
S: Yes, that's fine. Can you just sign here, please?

Lesson 8.4 Recording 8.6

Our business is called Ragbags. Our idea is to make beautiful bags out of recycled material, so old jeans and clothes that you would normally throw away. We hope to make money by re-using old material and turning it into different types of bags; all types of bags, shopping bags, beach bags, handbags, whatever you need. So, you can either buy one of our ready-made bags, or if you have some material that you really like, we can make one especially for you. To be successful, we need to make sure the bags are really good quality and look wonderful. We don't need a lot of money to start the business, because we'll make the bags at home. We plan to sell Ragbags at markets, in local shops and also online. We'll have a website with lots of beautiful photos, where people can choose their designs and colours and then order their wonderful bag. And the best thing about the company is that you will have an amazing bag, made from your own favourite recycled material. Each bag will be unique, one of a kind, and we'll have fun making them too. It's a win-win.

Lesson 9.1 Recording 9.1

Hi and welcome to Green Ideas. Now, the problem with some of the traditional ways of saving the environment is that they can be really boring. So today we're looking at ideas for protecting the environment that are a bit different, and we think they sound fun.
Our first project is called Hug it Forward. This great project started in Guatemala where communities decided to work together to build schools out of old plastic bottles. In the first project, over 1,800 kids from the region filled 10,000 plastic bottles with bits of plastic, food wrappers and other rubbish found on the streets. They then used the bottles as bricks to help build a school. By the time they had finished, they had a new school and the area was a lot cleaner too! Now the idea is spreading, and around the world more communities are using the bottle school technology to build their own schools. What a fantastic idea! And here's an idea for those of you who enjoy going out clubbing. The Surya nightclub in London was one of the first eco-friendly nightclubs in the UK. The club has a special dance floor which uses the movement people make when they dance to generate energy. The dancers manage to produce 60

https://polcet.edu.vn

AUDIO SCRIPTS

percent of the energy that the club uses for light and music. The owner of the eco-club had another great idea. If you walk or cycle to the club, rather than using a car or public transport, you get free entry. I love it. And our final idea for today is the story of the Seoul River Park. It's getting more and more difficult to find green spaces in cities, so when Dr Kee Hwang had a 'crazy' idea to take down the city's main highway and uncover the river that flowed below, to make a green park, most people thought he was mad. They told him that his idea would create traffic chaos and would be a disaster for the area. But Dr Hwang went ahead with the project, and created the 5.8 kilometre green river park. It's a place where the residents of Seoul can walk, relax and really enjoy the city. And do you know what? People are happier, and there's a lot less traffic chaos than before! It just shows that sometimes even the craziest ideas can work.

Lesson 9.2 Recording 9.6

1 I met wonderful people in the Amazon.
2 The birds we saw were amazing.
3 I've got a brilliant idea.
4 We need to put up a tent.
5 We took photos of the beautiful scenery.

Lesson 9.3 Recording 9.7

M = Man W = Woman

M: Why do we use rats after an earthquake? I'm not sure. It might be to help find people or other animals?
W: Yeah, they're used to rescue people. They can move in small spaces and they have a good sense of smell so they can find people.
M: Why do some prisons use abandoned dogs? Mmmm, let me think. It could be as prison guards. Maybe they use the dogs to guard the prisoners? Actually, no, it can't be that because they'd be trained dogs, not abandoned dogs. I don't know.
W: OK. It says: it was a programme that started some years ago. Abandoned dogs are taken to prisons, and then the prison inmates take care of them until the dogs are adopted.
M: Why does the army use dolphins? It's definitely not to attack people because dolphins are kind of nice. Um, it's hard to say. I really don't know.
W: Dolphins are used to protect areas of water. They can detect swimmers who shouldn't be there. A light is attached to the dolphin's nose. The dolphin bumps into the swimmer and the light falls off its nose. This tells the army where the swimmer is.
M: Why did airport security plan to use gerbils in the 1970s? Perhaps they can smell drugs or something like that?
W: Gerbils can smell people's adrenaline. When someone is excited, scared, or angry, adrenaline is released by the body. The airport security bosses hoped the gerbils would smell terrorists or other criminals in airports. In the end, the idea was abandoned because gerbils didn't know the difference between terrorists and people who were just scared of flying.
M: Why do we use seals for research in the ocean? Er, that's a good question. It might be because they can live in very cold temperatures.
W: They can dive deep down into freezing water. Scientists can attach research equipment to the seals' bodies, and this doesn't stop the seals from diving and swimming.

Lesson 9.4 Recording 9.9

A: OK, the most beautiful place I've been to. Well, a few years ago I went to Fish River Canyon.
B: Where?
A: Fish River Canyon. It's the second biggest canyon in the world.
B: After the Grand Canyon?
A: After the Grand Canyon.
B: Where is it?
A: It's in Namibia, in Africa.
B: Wow. And what did you think of it?
A: It was amazing. The first thing you notice is how big it is, of course.
B: Of course.
A: It just goes on and on as far as your eye can see. But the best thing about it was the silence.
B: Right.
A: It was so amazingly quiet. We went there in August and there weren't many tourists and it was just so quiet.
B: Would you like to go back?
A: I would love to go back. One day!
B: One day.

Lesson 10.1 Recording 10.2

Conversation 1

I = Interviewer D = Daniela

I: Daniela, so you live in Melbourne, right?
D: Yeah, that's right.
I: Well, Melbourne has been voted one of the best cities to live in for young people. So what do you think? Do you like living in Melbourne?
D: I love it! Melbourne is a really great city. It's very friendly and fun. Umm … there're lots of things to see and do.
I: OK, so you can go out a lot?
D: Yeah, it's very arty, there are lots of cafés and street art, music … and the nightlife is really good. People like to enjoy themselves in Melbourne.
I: That's great. And what about getting around? What's the public transport like?
D: Public transport is really good, actually. It's quite cheap, and it's efficient. You can go everywhere by tram, and sometimes it's even free.
I: So, what do you like best about living in Melbourne?
D: I think it's probably the atmosphere. Also, it's a great location. It's really close to some fantastic beaches, so there's surfing. It's got everything really. It's a great city.

Conversation 2

I = Interviewer R = Rick

I: Rick, you've lived in Dubai for … what, four years, right?
R: Yeah, four years.
I: So what's it like, living in Dubai?
R: Well, I read that Dubai is one of the world's fastest growing cities, so there are a lot of people, and it's very crowded. It's a great city for shopping, and going out. And it has a really good nightlife, with lots of bars and clubs.
I: Is it a safe city?
R: Yes, there isn't a lot of crime. The streets are very safe. But one of the biggest problems is the traffic. Everyone drives a car here – petrol is still cheap, so the traffic's terrible. One good thing is the taxis though. There are lots of them, and they're cheap, so you don't have to drive.

Conversation 3

I = Interviewer M = Matt

I: What about Prague? What's Prague like, Matt?
M: I've always loved Prague. I think it's definitely one of the best cities in the world.
I: What do you like best about living in Prague?
M: I think it has to be the city itself. It's so beautiful. It's like the city of your dreams, with beautiful buildings and squares. The old streets are wonderful to walk along. It is full of culture, music, bars, restaurants …
I: What about the weather? What's the weather like in Prague?
M: Yeah. OK, when I arrived in Prague, it was minus seven degrees. So, obviously, it gets very cold in the winter, and there is a lot of snow. But, in the summer, the sun shines, and you can sit outside in the cafés or walk up to the castle. It's a very special city and the people are so friendly.

Lesson 10.3 Recording 10.5

Conversation 1

G = Guest R = Receptionist

G: Oh, hello. Could you help me? There's a problem with the air conditioning.
R: Oh, yes?
G: I've just tried to switch it on, but it doesn't work.
R: Is it completely dead?
G: Completely. Absolutely nothing.
R: OK, we'll look into it right away. I'll send someone up. It'll be about five minutes, OK?
G: Thanks.
R: You're welcome. And sorry about that.

Conversation 2

D = Diner W = Waitress M = Manager

D: I'm afraid I have a complaint. Could I speak to the manager, please?
W: Yes, of course.
M: Good evening, sir. I understand there's a problem.
D: Yes. I'm afraid I have a complaint.

https://polcet.edu.vn

M: Oh?
D: Well, we got here at eight. And then we waited about twenty minutes for a table.
M: Right.
D: This is for a table we'd booked for eight, OK? Then we waited another hour for our meal.
M: Right.
D: One hour. Then when the bill arrived, they put this extra charge on it.
M: An extra charge? That's probably the service charge.
D: Well, could you check this for me, please?
M: Yes, that's service.
D: Well, to be honest, I don't want to pay this.
M: Of course not. Well, sir, I am really sorry about that. It's a very busy time of year.

Conversation 3

M = Man W = Woman

W: Excuse me. Do you work here?
M: Yes.
W: Do you know when the next train will be arriving? I mean, I've been here for over an hour.
M: I'm sorry but there's nothing we can do at the moment. Everything is delayed.
W: And you don't know when the next train is coming?
M: No.
W: Or why there's a delay?
M: Snow.
W: What?
M: Snow on the track. It was the wrong type of snow.
W: What do you mean 'the wrong type of snow'? You're kidding, right?

Lesson 10.4 Recording 10.7

1 One thing that really annoys me is the fact that we import so much food from overseas, rather than growing our own food here in this country. So you go to the supermarket and you can buy strawberries in the middle of winter, and I suppose that's OK. But then you try to buy an apple, and the apples are from New Zealand, and you think, 'Well, that's just crazy.' I mean I don't understand why we need to fly apples all over the world when we could just grow them here in this country? It really makes me angry. It would be so much better for the environment if people bought food locally. So, I'd like to start a campaign to encourage people to buy and eat local food. Perhaps I could start a website or publish articles in newspapers to try to get people to stop buying food that comes from all over the world.
2 I get really fed up with the fact that there's nothing for teenagers to do in this town. I just think it's really difficult because people complain that teenagers are just on the streets, causing problems. But actually, there isn't really anywhere else for them to go. There are no sports facilities, or clubs where they can spend time together and have some fun. And another thing is we get a lot of crime, because there're too many bored teenagers around. I'd like to raise money to build sports centres and youth clubs where teenagers can go to enjoy themselves, or do sports or learn something. I think there should be more things for teenagers to do, and they should be better and cheaper.

Lesson 11.1 Recording 11.1

1 I use my phone for everything. I text most of the time because it's quick and cheap, so I text my friends and my boyfriend. I like texts because they're quiet – nobody knows what you're saying. My mum used to call me all the time to check that I'm OK, but now she can text me, which is much better. I get really annoyed when you're talking to someone though, and they're texting someone else. I think that's really rude.
2 I use the internet a lot. I use Skype to keep in touch with my family because my daughter lives in France, so I don't see her very often and the phone is expensive. With the internet, I can see my grandchildren – it's wonderful. My son sets up the computer for me. I haven't learnt how to do that yet. And sometimes it crashes during the phone call, which is annoying, or I can't see the picture properly. But usually it's fine. Generally, I think technology is wonderful. When I was younger, we only dreamed of having video phone calls, but now it's possible and it's free.
3 We use a blog. It's a great way to tell people about your travel experiences. We've been to so many places already and it's nice to tell people about them. And you can put photos there of the people you meet and the places you visit. The best thing is that as soon as you write the blog, people all over the world can read it. The only problem we have is when we can't find an internet café.
4 I've just started to use networking sites like Facebook. I found some friends I haven't seen for years and it was great to get in touch again. The only problem is that I keep checking it when I should be working.

Lesson 11.2 Recording 11.3

1 If you give me your details, I'll send you the photo.
2 If people sign the petition, the company'll have to respond.
3 When your friends see the video, they won't be surprised.
4 If the situation gets worse, will you leave your job?
5 If there aren't elections soon, people will start protesting.
6 When you see this picture, I'll be in the Canaries!
7 If the product is really good then people won't write bad reviews.
8 If they change the design, will you buy one?

Lesson 11.3 Recording 11.5

M1 = Man 1 M2 = Man 2 W = Woman

M1: I use the internet all day at work and I still get my work done.
M2: Yeah, me too.
M1: I'm sorry, but I really don't see what the problem is.
W: I think the problem is that lots of workers spend all day surfing the internet and wasting their time instead of doing their work.
M1: Hmm.
W: And students at university are failing their degrees because they spend all their time checking Facebook and watching videos that friends send them.
M2: Yes, that's true, but … um … I don't think, you know, I don't think that the problem is the internet. You know, I think the problem is with the websites like Facebook.
M1: Yeah, definitely, like YouTube.
M2: Some companies and universities stop you from using certain websites. And in my opinion that's OK.
W: But it's so easy to waste time. I don't think you should use the internet when you're trying to work, unless you need it for your work, for research or something.
M1: I'm not sure about that. Going on the internet sometimes gives you a break. It's like having a cup of coffee or talking to someone in the office. People should use the internet as much as they like.
W: I don't think so …
M2: Yes, that's right. I think it's good. I run a small business and my staff use the internet as much as they want to. I don't check what they are doing. They do all their work and they are happy. I don't think it's a waste of time at all. It's the same as going to a bookshop …
W: No, but …
M2: … or looking through a pile of magazines.
W: I'm afraid I totally disagree. The problem is that people are addicts. People aren't addicted to reading books, but the internet is different. People spend too much time in front of their computer or their phone. They choose the internet over sports and going out. They forget how to live in the real world, and I think it's a real problem.

Lesson 11.4 Recording 11.8

1 OK – smart phone? That's essential. I love it. I use it all the time, for everything. I talk to people, chat, text, take photos. I couldn't live without my phone. Microwave? That's essential. I don't have lots of time for cooking, so I use the microwave a lot. Television? Not essential. I don't watch much television. DVD player no … not essential. Digital camera? Not essential. I use my phone. So, what else? Er … laptop? That's … essential really. I use my laptop for work, so yes, I need that. Tablet? Hmm. I guess it's not essential.

https://polcet.edu.vn

AUDIO SCRIPTS

2 Which are essential? All of them! Goodness. Right. Smart phone? Essential. I don't go anywhere without my phone. I need it in case there's an emergency and I have to call someone. Or if there's a problem with one of the children. Yes, I definitely need my phone. TV? That's essential really. I couldn't live without my television and DVD player. Umm. Laptop? Well, I need a computer really so yes, that's essential. Tablet. Well, no that's not essential. Digital camera? I suppose I don't need that. Someone else can take the photos! What else? Microwave. No. I can live without that.

Lesson 12.1 Recording 12.2

He told me he was an actor, not a dancer!
He told me he was an actor, but he told John he was a doctor!
He told me he was an actor, but his wife said he was a waiter!

Lesson 12.2 Recording 12.4

1
A: If I could be famous for anything, it would be art. I love painting and if I had more time, I would love to paint seriously. If I could have a painting in a museum, I'd be really happy.

2
B: I'd be a famous politician. If I was a politician, I would try to change the world. To stop all these wars and do something to help poor countries. You know, I think it's terrible how most politicians don't seem to worry about things like that.

3
C: If I could do anything, um … I think I'd be a famous footballer or something like that. Imagine if you scored a goal for your country in the World Cup, that would be such a good feeling. You would remember something like that forever.

4
D: I'd love to sing. If I could be famous for anything, I think I'd be a singer. Or a dancer. I'd love to be a famous dancer. I'm terrible at both of those things – I can't sing or dance! I guess that's why we have dreams, isn't it?

5
E: I would love to be a famous writer, or poet, like Shakespeare. I think it's a wonderful thing to be able to write a book that people all around the world want to read. To be able to speak to people in that way. Yes, I'd like to be remembered as a great writer. But I don't think that'll happen.

6
F: If I could be famous for anything, well, let me see … for being beautiful! That would be good. One of those beautiful actresses who wins at the Oscars. If I was famous, I would be rich, live in a big house, and have all those clothes. Oh yes, that would be nice.

7
G: If I could be famous for anything, it would be for inventing something, like a medicine or a cure for cancer. Not for being an actor or a musician. If I invented something that made people's lives better, that would be good.

8
H: What would I want to be famous for? Hmm. I wouldn't like to be famous. If I was famous, I wouldn't be happy. No, I prefer just being me, thank you.

Lesson 12.3 Recording 12.5

Conversation 1

A: Hello.
B: Hello.
A: How can I help you?
B: I'd like to go to a local restaurant. Maybe something with traditional food. Could you recommend somewhere?
A: Yes, of course. Hang on. We have a list on a map.
B: Ah, OK.
A: OK? So here's the hotel. And if you want to walk, you can go to this one here.
B: OK.
A: This is a reasonably priced restaurant which serves mainly …

Conversation 2

A: Hello.
B: Hello. How are you?
A: Fine, thanks. What can I do for you?
B: I read that there's a local market in the area. Is it a food …
A: The food market. Yes, it's a bit of a walk. Maybe thirty minutes.
B: Oh, that far?
A: Would you like me to call a taxi? It's about a five minute drive.
B: That would be wonderful.
A: OK, just a moment. I'll see if there's one waiting.
B: Thank you very much.

Conversation 3

A: Good morning.
B: Morning. I forgot my adaptor for the laptop. It's from the United States. Would it be possible to borrow one from the hotel?
A: An adaptor plug? Of course. Do you want me to send one up to your room?
B: Yes, please.
A: Can you give me a moment? I'll ask at the desk. It's just for a laptop?
B: Yeah, that's right. A U.S. laptop. I just forgot the adaptor.
A: OK, no problem. What's your room number?
B: Fourteen.
A: Room fourteen. OK.
B: Thanks a lot.

Conversation 4

A: Hello.
B: Hello.
A: How can I help you?
B: I want to see a show this evening. *Cats*.
A: Oh yes. *Cats*.
B: Would you be able to book two tickets for us?
A: Hold on. Let me just check where it's playing. OK, here we are. Yes, shall I book the tickets for you? Do you have any preference about the seats?
B: Any seats. Two together.
A: Two together, yes. OK, and it starts at 7 o'clock. So you should have plenty of time, and if you'll just wait here while I …

Lesson 12.4 Recording 12.7

I grew up by the sea. My father and my uncle are fishermen, and as a child I used to spend all my time on the beach. Every morning I watched the fishermen come in with their nets full of fish, and these men seemed so free and happy. So, I had this idea that I wanted to work on a boat. But the problem was: it was a very male profession. Only men did it, and fishermen didn't accept that women could go fishing. They thought we should stay at home and clean the house, do the cooking, have babies. I always asked my father to go on the boat with him and he always said no, stay at home and help your mother. Anyway, it's a long story, but eventually I became a cleaner in a hotel. And then one day I had the chance to work as a cleaner on a ship, one of the big cruise ships. It's a great job, and I've done it for the past six years. It's a dream come true because I spend a lot of time at sea. My next dream is to have a houseboat and actually live on the water. We'll see. I can make it happen!

https://polcet.edu.vn